



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

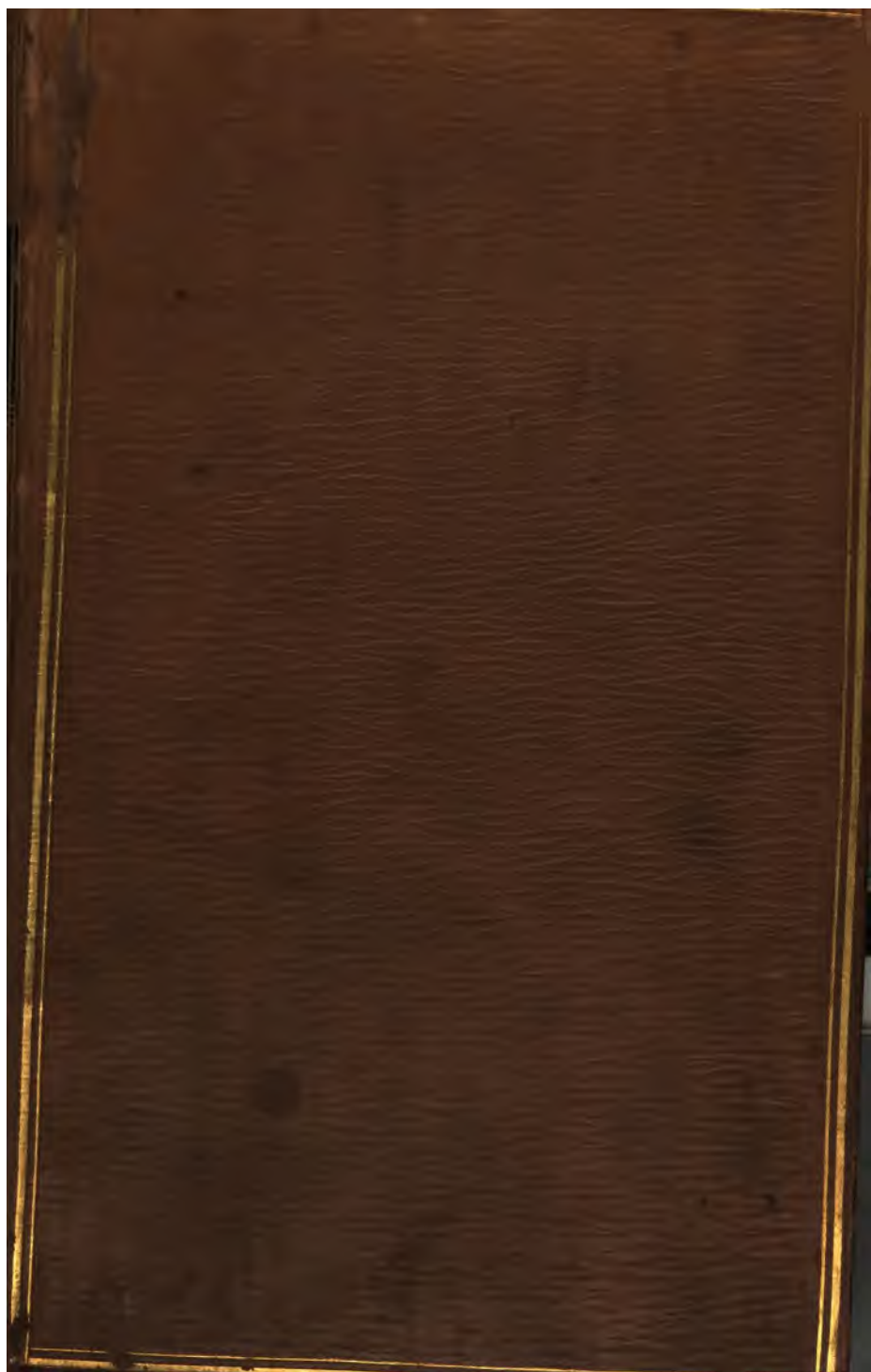
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

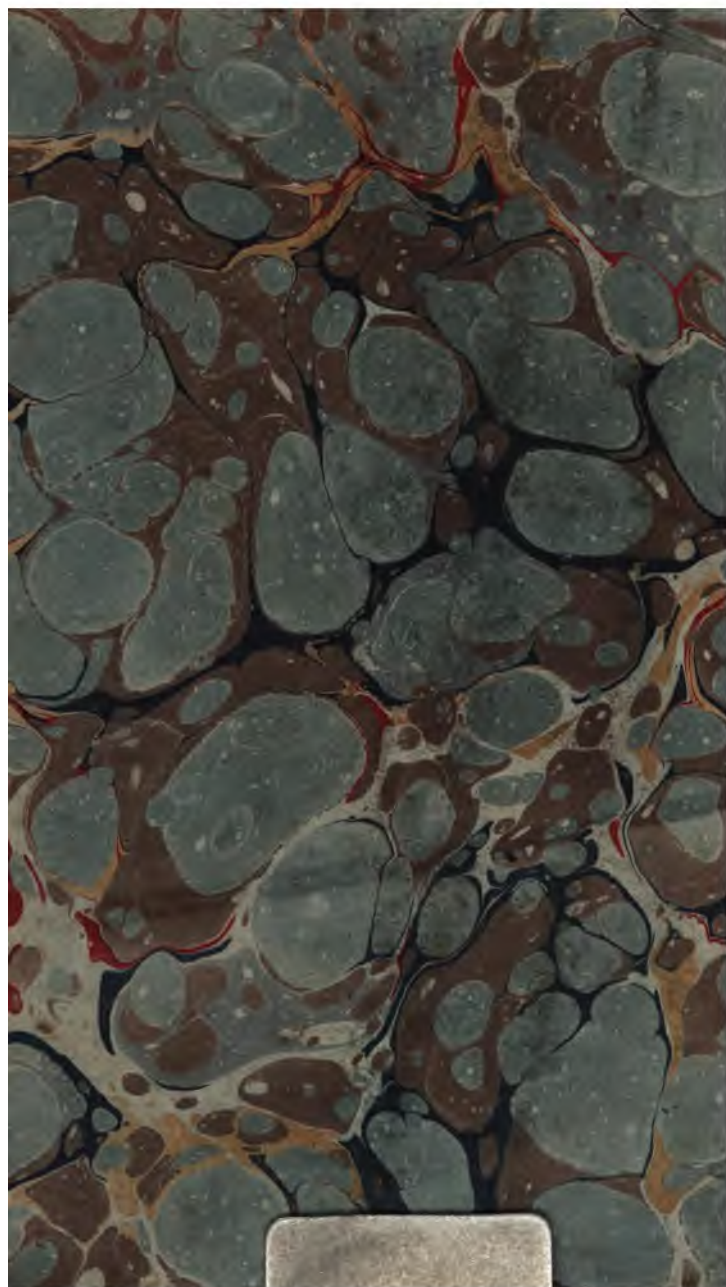
We also ask that you:

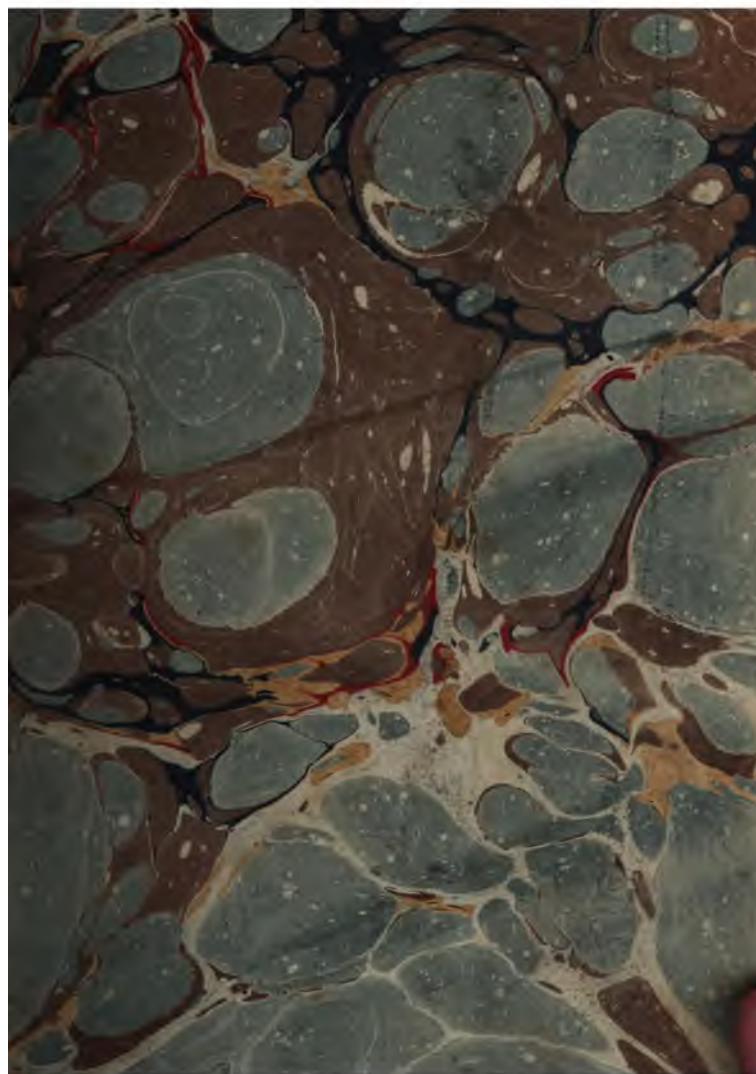
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







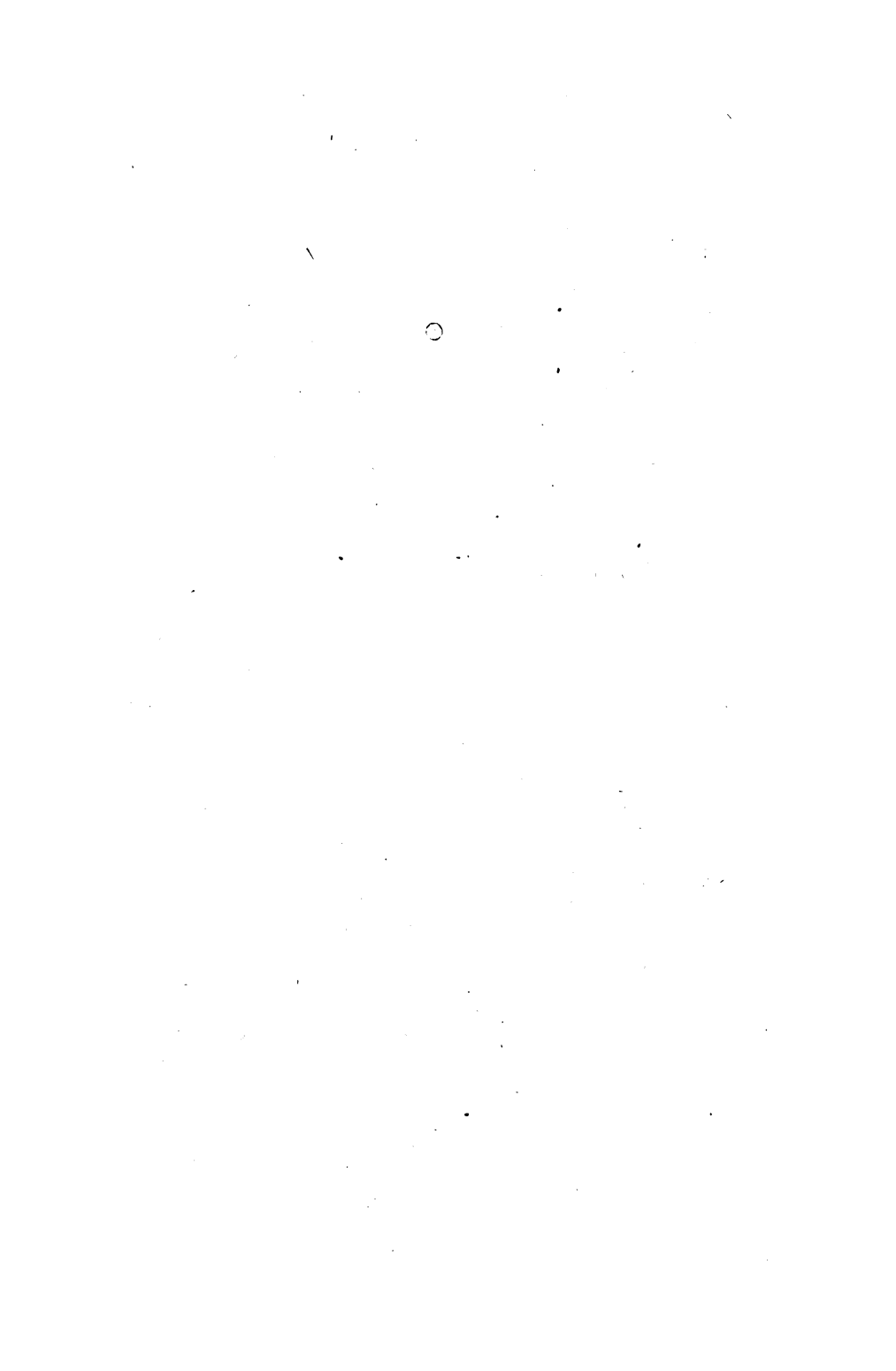


1/6<sup>x</sup>















THE  
ADVENTURES  
OF  
FOUR ILLUSTRIOUS PERSONS;  
AND A  
ROMANCE.

---

BY CHARLES SAYER.

---

Yes, thou art fled; and saints a welcome sing;  
Thine infant spirit soars on angel wing.  
Our dark affection might have hoped thy stay;  
The voice of God has called his child away.—  
Like Samuel, early in the temple found,  
Sweet rose of Sharon, plant of holy ground.  
Oh! more than Samuel bless'd, to thee 'tis given,  
The God he serv'd on earth, to serve in heaven.  
*World without Souls, p. 68. 4th edit.*

---

OXFORD,  
PRINTED BY W. BAXTER.  
1815.

2533.

e

479



A  
**SHORT ACCOUNT**  
OF  
**THE AUTHOR.**

---

**COULD** the spotless innocence of childhood, the fairest hopes that time would mature the expanding blossoms of superior intellect, or could maternal care and affection, have averted the stroke of fate, the interesting subject of this memoir had not faded in an early tomb. But it was the will of Divine Providence, that, “ ere “ sin could blight, or sorrow fade,” this opening flower should be conveyed to heaven, there to flourish in angelic purity, and there to receive the reward of the most perfect fortitude, piety, and resignation.

**CHARLES SAYER**, the youngest of the numerous family of **TERRY SAYER**, Esq. of Sandwich, in Kent, and Elizabeth his wife, daughter of **WILLIAM BELL**, Esq. of the island of Guernsey, was born November the first, 1803. He was a



delicate, but well-formed child, with a countenance peculiarly animated and intelligent. Indeed, his brilliant dark eyes, adorned with the most strikingly beautiful long eyelashes, might ever be said to express as much as his words. From his infancy he displayed marks of an extraordinary capacity and understanding, far beyond those of the generality of children at the same age. At three years old he began to read, and delighted in it so much, that he often declared his wish to be able to compose books; and preferred the amusement they afforded him, to playing with toys, or other childish gratifications. In November, 1808, one of his sisters taught him Arithmetic, and he went regularly through Addition, Simple and Compound Multiplication, and Division, all of which he perfectly understood, and which he acquired with so much ease, that he would frequently, while so employed, whistle or sing the lessons his sisters were practising upon their pianoforte. In July, 1809, he was taught Reduction; and was the following twelve months at an English day-school, and upon which occasion alone he acquired a knowledge of grammar. Though the youngest child in the school, he soon arrived at the top of the first spelling class, in which were boys of 14 and 15 years

of age. In 1810, the death of his father and two brothers, and the continuance of sickness in the family, obliged them to remove from place to place for change of air and scene, and allowed but little opportunity for attending to his education, except in Arithmetic, which was always a favourite pursuit with him.

During the winter of 1810, being at St. James's church in Bath, he enquired of his ever-attentive mother, what the painting over the altar was intended to represent ; who, not being sufficiently near to discern exactly, replied, she supposed the Last Supper ; to which he answered, in a tone as if fully impressed with the solemnity of the subject, " No, mamma, I think it cannot be that ; for the Disciples were all present at the Last Supper, and only two are represented there." Can such an answer, from a child of seven years of age, be ever effaced from the mind of an affectionate mother !

Having been early accustomed to witness an uniform attention to religious duties, he was upon all occasions extremely attentive and devout, and addressed his evening prayers to the Almighty with extraordinary fervency for some time previous to his dissolution. Sunday he always devoted to reading prayers and religious books ; and nothing could induce him on that

day to pursue his usual amusements. In his own family he was a dutiful, tractable child, and a most entertaining companion : but among the innumerable ties that endear his memory to his mother, none can make so indelible an impression, as his affectionate attention to herself, his anxiety to relieve her afflictions, and his earnest and constant endeavours to amuse her, and to divert her thoughts.

While his health would permit, he enjoyed with avidity the active sports suitable to his age, and was constantly employed both in body and mind ; but it was certainly his superior piety and goodness, that enabled him to support, for nearly two years, a lingering disorder, which was at times attended by great bodily sufferings, without a single murmur or complaint. A convincing proof of the very superior powers of his mind was, that he submitted cheerfully to every restraint imposed upon him ; saying, with regard to diet, “ I have left off wishing for those things I am not allowed to eat, “ as I know, if they were proper for me, Dr. CRAWFORD (of Clifton) would not forbid my having them.”

In whatever he was engaged, he was remarkably exact and methodical. His papers, books, &c. were always in the nicest order ; and every

part of the day was allotted to some particular occupation; consequently he left behind him many memorials of his industry and ingenuity. He had a wonderful taste in cutting paper; his trees in particular are exquisitely done; and as he never learned to draw, his specimens in that art are undoubtedly proofs of genius; his copies are so extremely correct and well executed, that it is easy to mistake them for the originals. Indeed, whatever he undertook, was performed with so much diligence and exactness, as was truly astonishing. He ever took a warm interest in the politics of the day, particularly when the French were in Russia; and was most anxious for the newspapers during the time the catholic bill was discussed. In his writing books and manuscripts scarcely a blot can be discovered; and he wrote so clear and good a hand, that his writing is as easily read as printing itself.

Of the following Publications, the first was begun December the 14th, 1812, and finished the third of April, 1813. The first few pages were written upon a slate, and afterwards copied upon paper. Finding that too tedious, he never again adopted it, but planned the story in his mind with such precision, that there is not a single word altered in the whole composition;

a letter is occasionally omitted, which he added afterwards. The second, which is called *A Romance*, was begun the latter end of April, and completed in less than two months. At that time he told his mamma he had discovered a method, by which he could proceed much quicker than formerly, which was, to arrange the events in his mind first, and then to express them in the words in which he intended to write them down; and that sometimes forty pages, upwards of one chapter, were frequently thus arranged in his mind ready to be committed to paper; and for this purpose, not more than three hours in the day were necessary.

So great was the rapidity and eagerness with which he read a great variety of books, that it seemed scarcely possible he should retain any distinct recollection of what he did read; but, on the contrary, so wonderfully extensive was his memory, that he constantly shewed evident proofs, that he not only remembered the facts, but even the language, word for word, appeared to be stamped on his mind.

Though, for some time previous to his dissolution, his health became gradually worse, he continued to amuse himself in his usual way till within a few days of his death, when he appeared very restless; but not a single word, or symptom



of impatience, escaped him: he uttered not one complaint; but merely said, in an affecting tone of pious resignation, "I am very fidgetty." Grateful for every attention paid him, and appearing perfectly satisfied with every thing that was done for him, he finished his earthly career, and resigned his soul into the hands of his Maker, expiring without a groan in the arms of his afflicted mother, July the twenty-eighth, 1813.

To that mother, whose heart was already lacerated by repeated losses, what a trial was the death of such a child! Yet, supported by the true spirit of Christianity, and animated by the bright hopes of futurity, she meekly, and even cheerfully, submits to the Divine will, in these words of holy Writ, *The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away; blessed be the name of the Lord.*

GUERNSEY, Mar. 1, 1815.

---



# THE ADVENTURES

OF  
FOUR CELEBRATED PERSONS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

**T**HERE once lived in great affluence an illustrious personage, called Don Alphonsa, who had three most intimate acquaintances; their names were, Don Castellano, a great general; Signior Anelgro, a renowned admiral; and Signior Sebastiano, a reputed nobleman, who in the course of his life had gone through a variety of extraordinary adventures. These four were all extremely rich, and their houses looked more like palaces, than the habitations of private persons, and the insides were furnished no way inferior to the apartments of a royal family. Their friendship was so great, that each took it in turn to entertain the other three at his house. Thus it was when the four friends were assembled in the house of Don Alphonsa, in the beginning of a long December afternoon, and consulting in what manner they should amuse themselves, Don Alphonsa proposed that they should relate their adven-

tures. This was instantly agreed to, and himself as master of the house was unanimously proposed to begin. He therefore began his history in the following words.

*The Adventures of Don Alphonsa.*

WHEN very young I discovered a great taste for seeking adventures. My father, seeing this, used his utmost endeavours to check it, but in vain. It increased with my years, so that by the time I was grown up I was quite impatient to set out. Seeing I should be unhappy till I got my wish, my father thought it best to comply : he therefore one day took me aside, and, representing the dangers I must go through, gave me three days to consider, and if I continued in the same opinion at the end of that time, he would furnish me with a vessel and men to go as soon as I pleased. I now conceived myself at the summit of happiness, and waited with impatience till the three days were past, when, seeing I continued of the same mind, my father bought a ship of 32 guns, and hired a crew of 240 men ; I then embarked, and set sail. We sailed two days without any thing remarkable happening ; but on the third, early in the morning, we perceived a large vessel making towards us, and soon discovered it to be a frigate of 36 guns belonging to the enemy. We immediately prepared for an engagement, and, the frigate coming up, the sky was in an instant

obscured with smoke ; the cannons roared like thunder, and the bullets flew like hail about our ears ; and the enemy attempting to board us, those that were not employed about the guns were obliged to draw, and keep them off sword in hand. We soon repulsed them in this way, and after a terrible engagement of about an hour, the frigate's main-mast went overboard close to the bottom, killing and disabling several men ; and a few minutes after the top part of the mizen-mast came down with a great crash, when she thought proper to sheer off ; but we pursued her, and after a short chase overtook and obliged her to surrender. We then took the crew out, and as the frigate was quite a wreck, we sunk her in this action. I lost nine men killed, and thirteen wounded, with very little damage to the vessel, while two-thirds of the frigate's crew were killed or wounded.

I then pursued my voyage without interruption for some weeks, as I did not wish to land till it was quite necessary ; but the ship springing a leak, the provisions beginning to fall short, and ports now getting very scarce, as we were going out of the more civilized parts of the world, I thought it best to put in at a port from which we were now at no great distance. I however stayed no longer here than was necessary to put the prisoners on shore, stop the leak, and provision the vessel. I then set sail for the second time ; and about a week passed away, when, one night, such a violent storm arose,



that we lost all management of the ship, and expected every moment to go to the bottom ; and the sailors were all so frightened, that they could do nothing during this time. I saw several flashes to the west, and distinguished the noise of guns at a distance, which I supposed were the signals of distress from some ship in as bad a situation as my own ; but I was not in a way to render it any assistance, and was therefore obliged to be content. I continued in this situation for nine hours, when the storm being abated to a high wind, and day-light coming on, my men's spirits returned. I encouraged them as much as I could ; but the wind still blew so hard, that, notwithstanding our utmost efforts, we could not direct the vessel. We continued in this terrible way for ten days ; but on the eleventh morning, to our great joy, the storm was entirely gone ; and as we were sailing along in the afternoon, we perceived three boats full of men rowing towards us : it directly came into my head that they were the crew of the vessel from which the signals of distress came, and I therefore desired my men to treat them well. My conjectures were right ; for they came alongside of us, and begged us to take them in, telling us, that they were shipwrecked on the night of the dreadful storm, and must certainly starve if we did not take them in, as they had hardly eaten any thing since that time. I could not refuse them, though I had rather have dispensed with it, as I was afraid the provisions would fall short, for there were

120 of them. As soon as they were all in safe, I took the Captain into my cabin, and desired him to tell me the particulars of his shipwreck, and what distance we were from land. He said, that two hours after the storm arose his ship struck, when he fired some guns, but that moment the sea broke over the vessel, and washed away some of the men ; upon which we all jumped into the boats, and hardly had got in when the ship foundered. We were soon carried away by the violence of the waves, and run a great risk of being upset. On the fourth day we saw land, and tried all we could to gain it ; but the sea ran so high, that all our efforts were fruitless. After that we lost sight of it, and saw nothing but the sea and sky till this afternoon, when we had the good fortune to fall in with you, and you took us in, or we must have all starved, as we quitted the ship in such a hurry, that in all the three boats there was nothing to eat or drink but about a third part of a round of beef, half-a-dozen biscuits, and two very small barrels of water.

The Captain here ended his account ; and I asked him whether he thought he could direct us to the land he had seen, and if it proved to be uninhabited ; if once we got about the place where he struck, if he could direct us into a port. He said he thought he could do either ; at which I was much rejoiced, as the principal reason of my asking was, that the pilot had a short time before declared to me, that we had been so much blown

out of our course during the storm, that he had not the least idea where we were; and as the ship was very much shattered, I thought it best to go to the land which they had seen in the boats; and, with the Captain's direction and assistance, on the seventh day came within sight of it, when I anchored, and, manning a boat with six men and an officer, I sent them to reconnoitre, and see what sort of a place it was, and whether it was safe to anchor in shore. The next day they came back with an account that it was an island, that they had been all round it, and had found a creek exactly fit for the ship to put in; that there was plenty of timber fit for repairing it, a great many deer, and in one part of it there was a forest, from which came great howling and roaring; and they therefore thought it was the habitation of some wild beasts. On this I immediately sailed into the creek, and set about repairing the ship; but as there were more men than was necessary, I declared my intention of going all over the island, and gave those who chose it leave to go with me; and twelve men and a midshipman offered to go the next morning; therefore we each equipped ourselves with a gun and sword, a cartridge box full of cartridges, and a powder horn: four of us carried large bags for the game we shot, and we all had a small bag of provisions. We then set out, and had gone about half-a-mile, when, turning the corner of a grove, we were at a short distance from a fine deer. As soon as it saw us

it set of, and away we all went full chase after it ; but, unfortunately, in its course it ran through a large space covered with prickly pear bushes : the leaves of these have hard thorns as long as a needle growing on them, and the fruit itself has bunches of small ones all over it ; but we were so eager in the pursuit that we did not mind them. I went first, and when I had got half way through, a large stone came in my way, and over I went headlong among the thorns. I got up as soon as I could ; but just as I was half way up, one of my men came along, did not perceive me, and down we came together ; and so it went on, as fast as we tried to get up, another came and tumbled us all down again, till we were all sprawling about. At last we got up, sadly scratched and disappointed, for the deer had time to get out of sight ; however, to make some amends, as we were making the best of our way out of the bushes, we disturbed some small animals like hares, and shot two of them. About noon we lighted a fire, and eat our hares, and some of the provisions we had brought : and as we sat round, a thought came into my head that I might found a colony there ; and the place where we were would do extremely well to build a town on ; for it was close to the sea, and at a short distance there were some large springs of excellent water. When we got up, therefore, I put a mark upon the place ; and after shooting near two dozen of curlews, wild ducks, and other water fowl, which were

along the shore, we went on. At night we slept in a tree.

The next day and the third passed away, and we shot only eight small birds. On the fourth our provisions were all out, and we came to the forest; but just as we were going to enter it, a large serpent attacked us: we fired and killed it; and as it was rather late we cut off its head, roasted its body, and eat it, and found it very good: but as we were enjoying ourselves, we heard a dreadful roar, and a tyger jumped out of the wood, and seized a man. I snatched up my gun, and was just going to fire, when the tyger springing off in the opposite direction to what it came, its tail came in contact with me, and hurled me to the ground, where I lay for some time, not daring to move, and heard my companions fire twice; for as soon as a part of the tyger touched me, I thought I was going to be devoured. At length I ventured to look up, and found they had killed the tyger, and the man was not hurt, as it luckily only held him by the coat. We passed that night in the wood, but there was such a howling that we could not sleep at all. The next day we got out, and when we were at a good distance from it, I and half of the men laid down and slept, while the other half continued up to watch. Presently I was awoke by being very roughly handled, and looking up found myself in the trunk of an elephant, who was examining me with great attention. My

companions who went to sleep were each in the trunk of a separate elephant, and I saw those who sat up at a short distance flying as fast as they could. On this I set up a dreadful roar, which woke the rest; and they seeing their situation joined their voices to mine in a general shout, which so frightened the elephants, that they threw us down, and galloped off in a manner so curious and grotesque, that our shout of distress was in one moment changed into a loud roar of laughter. After we had laughed full a quarter of an hour, we called the rest, but it was some time before they had courage to look back; however, when they did, and saw us safe and alone, they joined us directly.

Nothing more happened to us on our journey, as we got back to the ship the next day, after traversing nearly the whole island. I mentioned the building a town to the Captain, and asked his advice, but he said he did not know any plan better than what I proposed; I therefore took half of the men, and leaving the other half about the ship, I built a complete town of comfortable cottages, and when they were done, assembled the men, and desired those who liked it, to come forward and take possession of a house; and, as an encouragement, I told them that some time or other I should certainly send the wives and children of those who had them, and some more people for inhabitants; and near a hundred offered. I then gave the government to the Captain as a return for his services to me, and

giving the men what was necessary, as the ship was quite repaired, he directed me where to go, and I sailed away.

After a fortnight we arrived at a port in a country with which a peace had but just been concluded; and as we were lying in harbour one day, I was suddenly surprised to see some of the ship's company, who had gone on shore, come jumping into the boats, and row as fast as they could towards the ship, pursued by an immense mob of people, who came after them, surrounded the vessel, and demanded that they should be delivered up; and on my refusal would have destroyed both us and the ship, if I had not made haste and set sail. Fortunately we were well equipped, as I was only waiting for a favourable wind to go; and every thing seemed to unite in our favour, for just then a fair breeze sprung up, and we were soon out of their reach. I then enquired the cause of all this bustle, and found that the men had gone to drink at a public-house, where there were likewise some sailors belonging to the port, and got quarrelling, when the other men attacked mine, and getting the worst, by their noise and complaints so provoked the mob against them, that they threw stones and sticks in such showers, that my men were obliged to take to flight. I was satisfied with this account, as I was afraid they were the aggressors, in which case I should have punished them.

About this time some important discoveries were

made, and I was ambitious to acquire similar honour and riches to those who had them; I therefore sailed away to regions never before explored. In about a month we discovered some small uninhabited islands; here we found some very rare animals, birds, and plants, besides a number of very valuable pearls, for they lay scattered along the sea shore like shells; in other places I got quite a cargo of them. We likewise shot a candor: the wings of this immense bird measured twelve feet ten inches from tip to tip, and it is the largest species in the creation: and caught an animal called the elk, a very large kind of deer, the horns of which are applied to all the useful purposes of hartshorn.

Encouraged by this success I sailed more northward, till I came to a continent; and continued coasting along the shore, and making fresh discoveries, till I entered a spacious bay, where I thought we had best winter, as the cold was now coming on very severe. A few days after we had anchored, we were surprised to see a great number of savages standing along the beach, who were surveying the vessel with the greatest astonishment; and one of the men happening to fire a musket at a bird just at the time, its falling dead without any visible cause to them, and the flash and explosion, completed their surprise. We afterwards found that they were the inhabitants of the place, who were just come from the upper parts of the country, where they spend the



summer. In a short time they dispersed; and a few days after when we went on shore, as soon as they saw us at a distance, one of them, who by his dress and manner appeared to be the chief, ran and broke a branch from a tree, laid it between us and them, and then returned to his party. I could not in the least comprehend what this meant; but an old sailor, who had been abroad a great deal, and knew the manners of the savages, told me that it was a sign they wished for peace, and, if I accepted it, I must cut a branch and lay beside theirs, but, if I refused, I must break it. I therefore immediately accepted it; which the people no sooner perceived, than they plainly testified their joy, and came up close and examined us, and we found them very hospitable, well-disposed people. We passed the winter very well here; and I had an opportunity of tasting some bear's paws, which are reckoned great delicacies; for, during the cold season, they infested the place very much, and we were killing them continually. The next spring, when the inhabitants went into the country, the chief invited us to go with them, and I and about a third of the men went, as I wished to make a map of the place: but as soon as I had done this, I went back to the ship, and set sail homeward, highly elated with my good success: but before we came away they gave us some reindeer to take with us, for they had such numbers of them, and so tame, that they followed them about in such a manner as to become quite a nuisance. While we

were there we shot a great many, which astonished the natives as much as at first, and it was with the greatest difficulty we could make them believe that it was the firing which killed them.

But to return to my voyage. We had not been gone many days, when the man at the mast-head gave notice that the ice floats were approaching very fast, and we should soon be surrounded by them. We were all greatly alarmed at this; and the more so, as we soon found to our cost what he said to be true, for in less than half an hour we were completely hemmed in. We continued in this dreadful way for near two months, and had nothing to expect but that if a storm arose, the ice would be driven against us, and we must all perish, or that we must starve; and we certainly should have been the latter, if some large flocks of migrating birds had not fortunately passed us just at that time: but even so it would not have done, if the ice had not providentially thawed; and, as it was, we were obliged to kill all the deer, which was a great disappointment to me, as I wished very much to introduce the breed into my native country, which I knew would be a very acceptable thing.

At length we arrived at the inhabited parts of the world, and were glad to put in at the nearest port, in a miserable condition. However, as soon as we had recruited ourselves sufficiently, I set sail towards my native place, as I was impatient to arrive there, and publish my discoveries. But

I was destined to go through more dangers before I attained this ; for we were scarcely out of sight of the shore, when a squadron of the enemy of two frigates, one 44, and the other 36, and a brig of 18 guns, appeared in sight, and, seeing us all alone, bore down upon us. We tried all we could to avoid them, but their vessels were better sailers than ours, and soon gained upon us. Perceiving there was no chance of escape that way, I determined to sell my liberty as dear as possible, and therefore made preparation for resistance. The squadron soon came up, and surrounded us, and a very severe action ensued, till at length, just as I was going to strike, the ship having become completely unmanageable, a large ship of 60 guns came to my assistance. This turned the scale in my favour, and after some time the brig and the smaller frigate surrendered, but the other escaped by superior sailing. I then shifted my pearls into the frigate, and got in myself with the crew, for my own ship was so much damaged, that the first high wind would have sunk her.

After this we went on for some time very well ; but one morning there was such a fog that we could not see five yards off ; it was impossible to guide the ship. Presently it struck on a sand-bank ; and what was our surprise and grief, when the fog cleared up, to find that we were in the enemy's country ! At first I was so thunderstruck that I could order nothing for our safety ; but when I came a little to myself, I armed some of the sailors, and sent them to short

distances all around, that in case of an attack we might have some notice and time to prepare ourselves, and with the others set about trying to get the vessel off; and after working very hard all day and night, the next morning we succeeded; and very lucky we did just then, for we had scarcely pushed away from the shore, when a squadron of cavalry came galloping towards the place. We had been discovered by a peasant, who had been and informed the governor of a town about two leagues distant, and he had sent these to take us. They fired several volleys, but to no effect; and as I returned them with broadsides from the ship, which did very great execution, they soon thought fit to retire. We then pursued our voyage in peace for about an hour, when suddenly we perceived five cutters of 14 guns apiece in full pursuit after us. The governor had sent four to bring the ship into harbour after we were taken, and if the soldiers could not overcome us by themselves, to assist them; and got in another himself to go and examine it, as from the description he was very sure that it must be one of their own frigates, which had sailed from his port but three weeks before, and must consequently have been very lately taken. When they came to the place which the peasant had told them, enraged at our escaping without any damage, they set sail after us without delay. As soon as I saw them I guessed what they were, and cleared for action. When they came near they summoned us to surrender, which I

returned with a broadside, that sunk the foremost cutter; but the other four, trusting to their united strength, opened their fire upon us: but we soon sunk two more, when the remaining two thought better of it, and retired towards the shore as fast as they could, where I did not choose to pursue them. The crews of those we sunk, would certainly have been every one drowned, if we had not with the assistance of our boats managed to save a few poor creatures. They were very grateful for this, and begged very hard to be admitted into my crew, which I allowed them, and they afterwards proved to be of great service to us.

At last we came in sight of my native land, after an absence of above nine months, at which I was so transported that I could scarcely contain myself. About five leagues distant from the port for which we were making, there was a point which jutted out into the sea for above a mile and a half; when we came within a short distance of this the wind became pretty high, and through the drunkenness of the pilot we went within two yards of the rocks, and should have struck if one of the Lieutenants had not seized the helm, and directed the vessel round the point: he steered it the rest of the way, and at length I entered my own port, and anchored in it.

## CHAPTER II.

**I** WENT on shore as soon as I could to see my father and friends, and found them all very well ; and winter now approaching, I determined to rest from the fatigues of my voyage. I therefore sold all my cargo, and paid off the men, after telling them to be in readiness when I wanted to go to sea again. However, as I was obliged to leave a few to take care of the ship, at their own request, I left the Frenchmen we had saved. The winter soon passed away ; and being now completely recovered from the hardships I had gone through, my adventuring spirit returned with the summer. My father once more tried to persuade me not to risk myself on the ocean among barbarous nations, and reminded me of the narrow escapes I had : but all remonstrances were vain ; and what he produced as arguments against going, appeared to me encouragements for going. At any rate, let what would happen, I was determined to go ; I accordingly sent notice to my sailors, and in less than a fortnight the ship was ready. I had taken leave of my friends, and we put to sea with a fair wind.

I had made my former voyage of discovery towards the north pole, but I determined to make

this in the opposite direction. After some weeks sail we began to be very much annoyed by the heat, insomuch that I could not get the men to sleep in their cabins ; they would lie on deck of nights, notwithstanding I warned them of the ill effects ; which they soon began to experience, as in the short space of a week no less than twenty of them died : for in the tropical climates, though the days are so immensely hot, the nights are very damp, and the air is full of unhealthy vapours, which cause a disorder that generally proves fatal to those who sleep in the open air. After this lesson they were more cautious, and never slept any where but in their births ; so that in all the time we were in those hot regions, not a man on watch was ever found asleep ; a circumstance which before had frequently occurred.

We had now been gone a long time, and our provision of water was nearly spent, when, to our great joy, the winter of these parts, which is about the time of summer in ours, and during which there are almost incessant rains, came on. But this, though it relieved us in one thing, occasioned very great inconveniences in another ; for the men, having thrown almost every thing, that could have been of use in protecting them from it, overboard, were always completely drenched before night ; which brought on such colds and coughs, that, out of the whole crew, there were only seven without : and, to complete our distress, one morning we were carried away by a violent current with such rapidity,

that we scarcely knew what to make of it. I had frequently heard of the Maelstrom on the coast of Norway, and I began to be pretty sure that this would end in a whirlpool like that, and we should be all dashed to pieces. I communicated my thought to the Captain, who agreed with me in opinion. He communicated it to the mate, and the mate to the men, till every one in the ship knew it, and we all stood in ghastly silence, looking on each other, and expecting our fate with a fearful dread. However, after being carried with great violence through a small narrow strait, we were driven into an open sea, where the current subsided: but on consideration we thought ourselves in a worse situation now than before; for had the current ended in the manner my fears had suggested, we should have been all swallowed up in a moment, and should have felt but a momentary pain, if we did that; but now we were exposed on the wide ocean, without having the least knowledge where we were, with hardly any chance of escaping by the way we came, and, hardly knowing whether to advance or not, for fear of going still more remote from the possibility of an escape, we must stay there, and suffer one of the most lingering kinds of death, that of being starved! No, we could not bring our minds to submit peaceably to that. What then was to be done? we must choose one of these three things in this critical situation. I called an assembly of the officers, to take the best measures for our preservation; and after several proposals,



and much debating, at length it was determined that we should sail onwards, to the great joy of the crew, who almost all secretly wished it, as they still retained an insupportable dread of again meeting the fury of the current.

We hoisted our sails with a fresh breeze, and about the end of a week we got among some very large islands, and anchored at a short distance from a small bay, in which we perceived a great number of small canoes, huddled together in one corner, without any kind of order, from which we inferred that the place must be inhabited by savages. I then ordered out the long boat, and myself and twenty men, all well armed, got in, and rowed towards the shore. We soon reached it, and landed without opposition; but ascending the beach, which went up in a small hill, when we came to the top, we saw at the bottom on the other side a large party of savages, which appeared to consist of near fifty. They were blacks of a very tall stature, the shortest of them being above six feet in height; their only covering was the skin of a beast, with the hair plucked off and dried, so as to be very much the consistency of our leather. This they fasten round them in such a manner, as to have the appearance of a small kito. Their arms consist of a bow and arrows, and a short javelin about four feet long, which they sling across their back when they have not any present occasion for their use; but when they want them, they snatch them out with astonishing dexterity. They have

likewise a club full of knots, which is suspended at their side by the handle, in a belt of the same as their covering : but their chief is distinguished by a long spear, and the ornaments on his quiver, arrows, and the hilt of his club. But I shall fatigue your patience with this long account of the persons of the savages ; I will therefore return to my subject. They suffered us to come almost close to them before they took any notice, though we could easily perceive that they saw us from the first ; and from this I begun to be in hopes that they were peaceably disposed towards us : but just as we got a few yards from them, they suddenly set off such a flight of arrows, and our being so near gave them such an advantage, that they killed four of the men. Myself and the remaining eight returned it with a volley of musketry, as soon as we could, but it was done in such a hurry that it did not do much execution ; and they kept on showering flights of arrows in such abundance, that we took to our heels with precipitation, and made our retreat to the boat as fast as we could while we were able ; but before we arrived there, four put of the eight left were killed ; and after we reached the ship, two more died of their wounds ; for the arrows were poisoned ; so that out of the whole twenty that went on shore, only myself and two men were left ; which implanted such a terror in the minds of the rest of the crew, that it was not till we were in the utmost want of provisions, that they could be persuaded to go on shore.

This time I took more men than before, and resolved to be very cautious. When we were all landed therefore, I took four men, and went to the top of the hill, and looked over, but no savages were to be seen. We then made a signal to the rest to follow, which they did, and we went up the island, and got as much provision as we wanted, without interruption ; but as we were returning, between two very thick clumps of trees, we all on a sudden found ourselves surrounded by the natives, who had lain in ambush. They attacked us with great fury, being encouraged with their former success ; but then we in return were better prepared than before ; so that after some time hard fighting, we forced a passage through them, and regained the vessel, with the loss of six men killed : but we got off all the provisions, which was what the sailors cared most about.

But we were not allowed to rest long in peace, for the next morning we perceived the whole fleet of canoes, consisting of above sixty, all full of men, rowing towards us ; but on our firing several great guns, which overset some of them, they retired, and would not afterwards venture to attack us by sea. However, seeing that we could not live in quietness if we continued there, and that every time we went on shore for provisions, and such things that we could not possibly go without, we should be forced to an engagement, I determined to sail round to the other side of the island, in hopes of the savages not frequenting it so much as that ; at any rate, I was

pretty sure they could not frequent it more ; I therefore resolved to run the chance of it. We accordingly weighed anchor, and after eight days sail we passed the end of the island ; but on the ninth such a violent gale arose, accompanied by tremendous claps of thunder and vivid flashes of lightning, that the pilot lost all use of the helm ; and after being tossed about at the mercy of the waves for some time, an immense wave, mountains high, took us up, and dashed us with great violence towards the beach ; we struck, the vessel fell over on one side, and the sea broke over it in a rapid succession, that threatened almost instant destruction. At this dreadful moment all was terror and confusion on board ; myself and about two-thirds of the crew who could swim jumped into the sea, and endeavoured to reach the shore, and escape that way, and most of us succeeded ; but those that remained in the ship were washed off, and all perished. When we got assembled on the shore, instead of being thankful, and congratulating ourselves on our escape, we began to send forth dismal lamentations, and deplore our miserable fate in being shipwrecked on such an inhospitable shore ; but night coming on, sleep insensibly stole upon us, and put an end to our troubles for a few hours.

The next morning we saw the boat, which had been carried overboard by the violence of the waves, floating at a short distance from the beach ; we immediately pulled it in close ; and as there were

luckily several oars in it, I and part of the men got in to go on board the ship, and take all that we thought could be of any use to us out of it, before it went to pieces, which we foresaw it must the next high wind. This job employed us for three days ; the first we brought away all the provisions, six muskets, as many powder-horns, twelve swords, and five seamen's chests, with a number of great coats. The second day we got off twenty more muskets, two large barrels of gunpowder, quite full, and another about half, sixteen swords, eight hatchets, twelve hammers, and half-a-dozen saws. The third day we took away eight brace of pistols, the same number of cases of shot, six more swords, a large box of nails of various sizes, a case of needles, six four-pounders, a chest filled with balls for the cannon, another barrel of powder, all the clothes we could find, and a few shovels, axes, planes, and other odd tools. The fourth morning we were rather surprised, for neither boat nor ship were to be seen, and nothing but a part of a mast and some pieces of timber on the beach, and a few floating about ; but our astonishment soon ceased, when we found that a gale of wind had arisen during the night, and recollected the miserable condition of the ship. However, I was vexed at the loss of the boat ; we saved as many of the pieces as we could, and they afterwards were of great use to us.

We had now a large heap of things piled up upon the sand, and our next care was to get a place to

keep them in, and preserve them from the weather, and at the same time do for a habitation for ourselves; and after a short search we were fortunate enough to find one. To form an adequate idea of this place, it will be necessary to give some small description of the beach. It was a spacious cave in the side of a steep sand bank, for the shore went up for some distance in a smooth and almost level sand, then rose up all of a sudden in a perpendicular bank, and it was in this bank that the cave was situated. We saw the entrance plain enough as we walked about on the sands, but the thing was we did not know how to get in, for it was some feet from the surface of the beach. At length however we made a ladder of ropes, and hoisted a man up with it on the end of a long pole; and when once he was in, he threw out the ladder, and we clambered up with ease. We found the cave extremely suitable to our purpose, and therefore immediately set about removing our arms, ammunition, tools, and every thing; which job we completed in two days.

When we were all comfortably settled, our first consideration was, that provisions would not last for ever, and in that case we should have to go an immense distance along the sea-shore before we came to a place where we could get them, run the risk of being discovered, which was what we dreaded most, and if not, that we should be weary before we got up into the island at all, consequently

could bring away but very little. I therefore resolved to make two subterraneous passages from the cave, one short one, to go up immediately and open into the country, and the other, in case the first should be blockaded, to go a considerable way under ground, and open at least half-a-league from our habitation. We accordingly set about digging them with all possible speed, and as the soil was principally sand, the small passage was soon done; but we were now dreadfully perplexed how to hide up the entrance. At length, however, we thought of a scheme, and immediately put it in execution; we nailed some pieces of board together, so as to make a trap-door exactly to fit, and then fastening a large withered bush on the outside, when it was pulled down, to any person who did not know that a door was concealed under it, it appeared as if there was nothing but a heap of brambles. The great passage however cost us much more time and labour, the ground growing harder and harder as we went on.

One day as we were toiling at our usual work, I was very much surprised at our finding what through the very bad light we mistook for some small pieces of glass; and I wondered how glass, an article only made in civilized countries, could get buried in an island inhabited by savages; but what was my surprise, when we carried them to the light, to find that they were brilliant diamonds! It directly entered my head that there was a mine of

them. This I disclosed to the men, and promised them, if ever we got back to our own country, when they wished to retire, to give them enough to live in comfort for the rest of their lives. Encouraged with this they set to work with fresh vigour, and at length, after a tedious job, the passage was finished: the entrance we stopped like the other. We besides this, made several cavities in the sides of our habitation for the reception of our powder and ammunition; and with the sand and earth out of all these, piled up in front of the cave, and knocked together tight with our shovels, so as to be firm and solid, we formed an extensive terrace, with a low parapet wall all round the outside, only leaving a small opening for the ladder. Our six cannons were placed on this terrace at short distances; so that our cavern now wanted nothing for comfort and security, and we lived for some time almost as happy as if we were in our own country; and might have done so much longer, if the noise of our muskets, one day that we were out shooting, and had ventured rather too far, had not betrayed us. Immediately on hearing it, the savages appeared in great numbers at a distance; and though we had the good fortune to get back that time without their knowing even hardly which way we went, we were well assured, that we could not remain long without the place of our retreat being discovered; and as we knew sending small parties against them was in vain, we resolved to unite our whole force, and take every man



we could spare ; but in case this failed, we determined to take advantage of the short space before our retreat was found out, to collect a very great store of provisions, that we might have time to take measures for an attempt to leave the island. We accordingly did so, taking care to be in sight of our home, and always keeping some one on watch, that in case the natives appeared in sight, we might retreat under ground, and so prolong the time as much as we wished. But there was no need of this precaution, for we had plenty of time to collect as much as we could stow away in our cave, which we afterwards found was because the savages were collecting a large force to encounter us.

When we had done this, I assembled our little army, and armed as many as I could with a musket and sword, and the rest with a musket, sword, or a brace of pistols ; we then marched forward : but to prevent our being surrounded, as we had been before, I divided our force into three divisions ; the van guard consisting of twelve men, which I headed myself, it being the most dangerous post, to encourage the men ; the main body, of thirty-two, and the rear guard with the same number. As the van, after going about half-a-league, we saw the points of the darts glittering in the sun at a distance, and soon perceived the savages, to the number of 120, under four chiefs, prepared for battle. I therefore drew my men up in a line, with the rear division for the right wing, and my own for the left, and in this

order we should certainly have been victorious, if the sailor to whom I had intrusted the command of the centre had acted properly ; but having repulsed the natives in their first onset, instead of pursuing the advantage, and routing them completely, he led on his men to the assistance of the right wing, that was doing very well by itself ; which the savages perceiving, they suddenly rallied, and attacking my men on all sides when they did not in the least expect it, they were every one of them killed. Seeing all was lost, I endeavoured to escape with the remaining few, which myself and eight others accomplished, by running into a thick shrub, where the savages, seeing they had gained a complete victory, did not care to follow us ; and after collecting all the arms and accoutrements, such as powder-horns and cartridge-boxes, and piling them up in a heap as a trophy, and then burning the bodies of the men they had killed, during which they danced around the flames with horrid gestures, they went away up the island. When they were got well out of sight, we crept from our place of concealment, and, pulling down the pile of arms, loaded ourselves with them, and began our dismal journey homewards : and thus ended the expedition on which our sole hopes rested.

When we arrived at the cave, our melancholy account spread an universal gloom ; but as lamentation would not bring us into a better situation, I assembled the men to consult upon what was best to be

done ; and, after some consideration, we determined to attempt making a bark, and run the chance of being able to find a passage back to our native country. We therefore set about it without delay : and it was now that the timber we had saved from the wreck was particularly serviceable ; for with it, we were enabled to finish our little vessel, with only once going into the island to get a straight young tree for the mast and bowsprit, and another larger one for the yards and oars, when without it, we should have had ten times as much trouble, and after all most likely not succeeded. Our sails we made of some sheets that were in one of the chests, which we cut down to the proper size and shape. When our bark was rigged, and every thing quite complete, we let it down over the wall to the beach by the assistance of a cable and some other ropes, for our terrace was so large that we had plenty of room to build something less than half.

The next thing, when we had hauled it close to the sea, was to make a cradle, and launch it ; and to our inexpressible joy it floated extremely well. We therefore immediately began removing every thing that we meant to take on our voyage into it : first our six pieces of cannon, with as many fire-arms and swords as we thought we should want, and a large store of cannon and other shot ; then all our tools, and the two remaining gunpowder barréls, together with four or five seamen's chests full of linen and clothes ; then the provisions ; and lastly

our two empty barrels filled with part of the diamonds we had discovered. We then, after putting the remainder of our things in the two passages, and stopping up the entrances, so that if the savages came to examine the cave they would not suppose there were any, embarked, and set sail with a fresh breeze from a shore, rendered hateful to us by the various misfortunes and disasters that had befallen us on it.

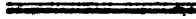
After a little consideration, I determined to go round to the side of the island where we first anchored, and then bend our course towards the current through which we had been driven; for I could not help entertaining a suspicion, that it did not run with that violence during the whole year. We accordingly steered that way; but on the fourth day we perceived four canoes making towards us with the intention of an attack; and they had actually got their bows fixed, when, on our firing one of our cannon, they all rowed away with as much haste and precipitation as they could, though they might have easily overcome us; such was their terror at the discharge of a piece of artillery!

After this we pursued our voyage without any interruption on the part of the savages, and in a little more than a fortnight we arrived at the mouth of the strait, which, to the great astonishment of the sailors, was no more agitated than the surrounding sea; but their cause of surprise soon ceased, when we recollected, that when we were driven through

before, it was during the rainy season, which swelling the water, caused it to rush down through the strait with the violence that had proved so fatal to us; but as it was now the dry part of the year, it was perfectly smooth and calm. When we had got to nearly the end, we landed on one side to replenish our stock of water and provisions; for though we did not want them just then, yet as it would be a very great time before we should be able to do so again, I thought it best; and while we were in search of these we shot a leopard and leopardess, the skins of which we carried to our ship.

When we had got as much provision on board as the bark would hold, we proceeded on our voyage, and after encountering incredible hardships and dangers, particularly one night, when we were no less than five times nearly striking on some sunken rocks, we descried a shore, which from our course we were certain belonged to a civilized country. Ready to perish with hunger, as our provisions had been out four days, and almost in despair, this joyful sight revived our spirits, and all at once making a vigorous effort at our oars, assisted by a fresh wind, and all our sails spread, attempted to reach it: fortunately, as we were rowing as fast as we could in our miserable state, I recollected that the land we were approaching must be inhabited by the enemy; we therefore immediately stopped our bark, with the intention of waiting till night, and then going on shore under cover of darkness, and

bringing off a cow or a couple of sheep. But we should have starved before that time if a fishing boat, returning home laden with fish, had not fallen in with us; and what we took out of that served for the rest of the voyage.



## CHAPTER III.

**M**Y entrance into the harbour in a little bark, with only twenty men, the poor remains of my crew, as I was universally famed throughout the port for my former discoveries, and it was well known that I had sailed about a year before from the place in a frigate of 32 guns and 250 men, for the purpose of making more, attracted a great number of people along the quay, who, anxious to know the result, and hear an account of our voyage, and surprised to see me return in such a different manner from what I went, crowded round us in such a manner when we attempted to land, that it was a long time before I could possibly think of going on shore. At length, however, after satisfying their curiosity a little as well as we could, I ventured to try; but the concourse of people was still so great, that I continued wedged in among them for above half-an-hour, only moving a few paces, sometimes one way, sometimes another, and then it was more through the motion of the crowd than my own exertions. But as soon as I could extricate myself, I ran as fast as I could to my father's house, to see him after my safe return, inform him of the great riches I had discovered, and shew him the small portion of them which I had brought home. But what was my grief, when I ar-

rived before it, to find it all shut up, and learn from an intimate acquaintance, who happened to pass by just at the time, that he had been dead near six months ! I returned to the vessel in great affliction, and, after taking my diamonds and leopard's skins and every thing of value out of it, sold it, and then dismissed the men with a handsome present : and as I found they did not wish to retire, I gave them orders to come to me at the end of a year, as by that time I should have finally determined whether I should make any more voyages or not.

When all this business was done, I went home, with a resolution of doing away the fatigue and hardships I had gone through, by a regular and quiet life in my own house. After the dangers I had experienced, any person would suppose that I was now settled peaceably in my native place for the remainder of my life : but this was very far from being the case ; for ten months had scarcely elapsed, when, recollecting the promise I had made to the Captain of the vessel and sailors which I had left for inhabitants in the first island of my discovering, I must needs begin making preparations for my third voyage ; which was not indeed for the purpose of making more discoveries, but of visiting those I had already made, and consequently exposed to less danger. And though what I have just said was one of the principal reasons of my going, yet I should have gone without it ; for now the remembrance only of the hardships was left, I could not be



satisfied till I had gotten possession of the island in which the diamond mine was, and which I shall hereafter call by the name of Diamond isle. Accordingly, by the time my old sailors came to me for my answer, I had equipped a small fleet, with proper crews, and every thing that was requisite ; and, after distributing them in the different vessels as guides, I put to sea with a squadron of ten ships of different sizes under me ; viz. my own ship carrying 44 guns and 320 men, another frigate of 40 guns and 295 men, and a third of 36 guns and 260 men. On board the two first were embarked 500 soldiers, 100 of which were to be left as a garrison to my first colony, and the rest for the subduing of Diamond isle, and afterwards to remain there for the purpose of protecting it from the invasions of the other islands with which it was surrounded. The small frigate was filled with people of different trades for building a town in the latter place, and enlarging that in the former for the new comers, as I intended to stay there the whole summer. The rest of the vessels, consisting of a sloop of 22, two brigs of 18, and four cutters of 12 guns, were laden with inhabitants, and various sorts of necessaries, for the colony I had already formed, and the one I was going to form.

But I will now conclude my account of the armament which was fitted out by me, and return to a more amazing subject, that of my proceedings, and what befel me during my last, and, in the end, most fortunate voyage.

Two days after we had set sail, a violent storm arose, which entirely dispersed the squadron. My own ship was nearly foundering, and two others were very near going on a quicksand. It was four days before we were all collected together again; and then I found the vessels in such a shattered condition, some having lost their bowsprits, and several their top-masts, that we were under the necessity of returning to port to repair the damage they had sustained. But when this was done, we set sail with the first fair wind, and on the fifth day one of the cutters, which was some distance to leeward, made signals that an enemy's fleet, consisting of one 60 gun ship, on board which the Admiral's flag was flying, two of 48, one of 30, and seven sloops of 20 guns apiece, was in sight, and making towards us. I therefore immediately collected the ships, and formed them in a line of battle, ordering all who could not be of any service in the action under hatches; and as the wind blew pretty fresh, the enemy soon closed, engaging as they came up. With the first ship they happened to come along-side of us, so that the whole of the two fleets were soon brought into hot action, and continued so for near seven hours; when the Admiral's ship, which I encountered myself, having been sunk, together with two others, a fourth burnt, and a fifth dismasted, and otherwise so much damaged, that above two-thirds of it was under water; the remainder, seeing the fortune of the day was turned against

them, crowded up all the canvass they could carry, and steered away as fast as they were able. And I did not care to pursue them, as it would have taken us out of our course; and, if we had captured any of them, the prisoners would have been more incumbrance than the vessels were worth, as we had already on board, with those we had saved from the enemy's ships, full as many people as we could conveniently carry. But if I had pursued them, we should no doubt have taken or destroyed nearly all the remainder, as I found the vessels had not suffered any more damage than what might be easily repaired at sea.

I sailed on, and, after a pleasant voyage of a little more than five weeks, we arrived at the island. I drew up the ships at anchor before the town, which I was much surprised to find near three times as large as when I last saw it, and altogether a most commodious set of buildings; for, instead of being all wood, as they were when I left the island, the houses from the greatest to the least had every one of them a good strong wall on the outside. There were also two very strong forts for 20 great guns apiece, one on each side the town, which commanded the anchorage for ships, and which were quite ready for the cannon to be placed in, and a garrison. When I entered the place, my surprise, instead of diminishing, increased; for there was not only a general market for all who wished to buy and sell, besides a very nice church, but several shops were already set

up. My search for the house of the Captain, who, as I have before mentioned, I had deputed governor of the island, and which was the first thing that I did, was not very long, as it was easily to be distinguished by its superior size and elegance. As soon as I saw him, I expressed my satisfaction at finding the town in so much more forward a state than I could have had any reason to expect; and he told me, that I must consider myself chiefly indebted to the elephants for it; for that once having caught and tamed several of these animals, they were of the greatest use to them in bringing their loads of stone from the quarry, and chalk to make lime from a pit, which they had discovered at some distance. He likewise added, that they had succeeded in exterminating the wild beasts from the island; and had killed so many of the serpents, that one was now scarcely to be found; and then shewed me a small room quite full of the skins of tygers, lions, and other ferocious animals, which they had destroyed, altogether of immense value; and, as I thought I could not express my gratitude in a better manner, I made him a present of them, which it was some time before he would accept.

The new inhabitants, and various things which I had brought with me, together with several other people that came out during the summer, were a great acquisition to my colony, and so increased its population and consequence, that before we left it, instead of 100 inhabitants, there were above 400. Se-

veral vessels had been for the commodities it produced; and as I found they had several small ships already built along the island, a very tolerable intercourse was kept up with my native country. And now fourteen small vessels having joined me, fitted out by merchants and adventurers, who wished to try their fortunes in distant parts, and put themselves under my command, and the season being come for sailing to Diamond isle, after leaving the sloop, a brig, and two cutters for the protection of the trade, I set sail with twenty ships; and, when we had passed the strait in safety, arrived at the island in nine days.

When we were all safely anchored, I disembarked 300 of the troops, leaving the remainder on board the small vessels, to keep the savages off by a fire of musketry, in case they came down to attack them while I was gone. I likewise landed two field-pieces, with some sailors to draw them, and a few marines laden with grape and round shot, and then marched forward in the same manner as in my last fatal engagement; viz. in three divisions, van, rear, and centre, with the artillery in the middle of the centre division, and traversed the island four days, without discovering any vestige of the savages; and indeed it was no wonder, for ever since we had left the place they had been in continual dread of an invasion from some new enemy, which at last increased to such a degree, that they removed all but their fighting men to another island, burning their

villages, and destroying every thing they could not carry off.

On the fifth day, however, we descried from the top of a hill the enemy encamped at a short distance, and found it to consist of 1000 men, headed by the king in person, with 40 chiefs under him. As I did not like to trust my force against so great a disparity of numbers, without the assistance of stratagem, we kept out of their sight, till I had found a place suited for a scheme, which I had in my head, of defeating them with very little loss : and then, after placing the rest of my soldiers and cannon in order, I sent about a quarter of them to attack the savages ; and these, after a little fighting, pretending to fly, drew the natives after them into the snare, till they suddenly found themselves completely surrounded, and exposed on two sides to the fire from a piece of artillery. On seeing this they began to fight with desperation, till at length the king and ten chiefs, besides a great number of men, being killed, and seeing they would not leave off till they were all destroyed, I made a signal to my men to give way, just sufficient to let them pass ; which they no sooner did, than they all rushed through, and, running to the sea-side, jumped into their canoes, and rowed away as fast as they were able, quite out of sight.

After traversing the whole island, and finding it quite empty, we returned to the ships ; and, while the workmen were employed in building a

town, I went to visit the cave, which was just as we had left it; and after taking the things out of it, we made a short descent into the diamond mine, and loaded my own ship with them. When the town was built, the inhabitants settled, and every thing comfortable, I left the other ships, and came away with only my own, leaving them orders to send me a cargo of diamonds annually. When I got home, I had the house, in which I at present live, built, and, as soon as it was ready, I sold my other, and came into it, with the intention of remaining quiet for the rest of my life; and had not been settled long, when I had the pleasure of becoming acquainted with Don Castellano, who soon after introduced me to you, Signiors Anelgro and Sebastian; and from that time our great intimacy has made known to each other every thing that has happened to us.

Don Alphonso thus finished the recital of his adventures; and, as it was rather late, the other three friends retired to their respective homes: and the next evening, being all assembled in the house of Don Castellano, he repeated his history as follows.

## CHAPTER IV.

*The Adventures of Don Castellano.*

**F**ROM quite a child I had a very great liking to the army, which I inherited from my father, he being himself a lieutenant-colonel; and accordingly, when only fifteen, I entered it as a cornet in a regiment of horse; and had not been in long, when, war having been declared against some foreign states, an army was sent out, and I embarked on the first day of March, being Thursday, with the rest of the troops. Our voyage, in consequence of contrary winds and various delays, was a tedious one, we not arriving at our place of final destination for six weeks; but as soon as we did, a general disembarkation took place, and the troops were immediately put in motion.

My first exploit was this: I had been sent out in a brigade of 5000 men, which had been detached from the main body for the purpose of watching one of the enemy's divisions, and taking an exact account of its movements; and being one day out with a small party of 40 cavalry, reconnoitering for that very purpose, we were suddenly surprised, and had to sustain the charge of nearly the whole of the



enemy's detachment, which was much superior in numbers to all our brigade put together, for upwards of a quarter of an hour, till the rest of the forces came up to our assistance, and the action became general. During the heat of the engagement I made a vigorous effort, and, cutting down a serjeant, a corporal, and three men that opposed me, took the enemy's standard, and brought it off safe. This procured me the honourable post of carrying the colours, and soon after I was promoted to the rank of lieutenant; which after having held the usual time, I had the good fortune to be made captain directly, and appointed to the command of a troop of 120 horse. I had not acted long in this station, when myself and my men were sent as a garrison to a small and narrow, though very important, pass, between two mountains; for if the enemy had gotten possession of it, they would not only have had it in their power, by placing a few cannon on the heights, to keep us continually annoyed by a distant fire, but, independently of this, they might have attacked and forced us to come to an engagement at any time they pleased, whether we liked it or not. All this considered and weighed together made the commander-in-chief resolve to defend and garrison a place, where no military had been for near a century, as long as ever he was able.

We were accordingly sent; and as soon as we got up, began to examine our quarters, and found the castle, which had formerly been a very strong for-

tress, (independently of the assistance of nature, by which it was much favoured,) from being so long neglected, quite in ruins; and the little that was not quite gone was in such a dilapidated state, that it was some time before we could restore it even to a tolerable degree of comfort. But this was not the only thing; for some of the men, who were of a superstitious turn, fancying and reporting that they had seen sceptres and ghosts while on watch, it soon spread itself to the rest, till at length they all got such a dread, that they declared their intention of leaving the place; and I was obliged to use my utmost eloquence to persuade them to stay, which they at last consented to: and fortunate it was that they did, for that very night the mountain was climbed and assaulted, the great gate which defended the passage itself attempted, and in short the pass, and attacked at all points at the same moment. Our small numbers made it extremely difficult to defend it against so many; however, thrice did the enemy advance to the charge with loud shouts, and quite confident of success, and as many times they were driven back with great loss: but the fourth time the few brave fellows that defended the gate, weakened by the preceding charges, and unable any longer to withstand such a great superiority of numbers, gave way, and we were instantly surrounded.

The men now gave up all for lost, and began to fight desperately, with the resolution of sell-

ing their lives as dearly as they could ; but, waving the standard in the air as an encouragement, I rushed towards a part of the enemy's line that was much weaker than the rest, and they, animated by the slightest hope of escape, following me, we broke through, carrying every thing before us like a torrent, and, galloping down the side of the hill as fast as our horses would go, arrived at the camp in less than a quarter of an hour.

The general, who acted as commander-in-chief, no sooner heard that we were arrived at the camp, with the news that we had been driven from, and that the enemy had gotten possession of, our post, than assembling a body of 400 men, he put them under me, as, from my being acquainted with the mountain, he thought he could not entrust the command to a better person ; and gave me orders to march up immediately, without delay, and attack the enemy before they had any reason to expect it : which I did ; and, falling upon them while they were yet all in disorder, and exulting at their success, easily put them to the rout, killing or taking the greater part ; and the few that got off were glad to make their escape, by exerting their agility in running to the utmost.

The post being re-taken, after placing the men and every thing in readiness in case it should be attacked again, I went back myself to the camp to inform the general of the result, and our good fortune, as we had not one man killed, and only four

slightly wounded. Upon this he commended me highly; and, after hearing my account of the place, sent up 200 more soldiers for the garrison, and several cannon, and a few artillery-men, for its better defence. But as from my rank I could not have the command of so large a body of troops, the station was entrusted to an officer higher in the service, and myself continued in my old, viz. the command of a troop of horse.

After this, I served with the main army for some time, during which I had several opportunities of distinguishing myself; particularly once or twice, the most remarkable times, which I shall mention, and which were the following. The first time, which was during some hard skirmishing, I with my own troops alone broke through a squadron of the enemy's cavalry, and completely routed, dispersed, and put it to flight, taking, besides a great number of private prisoners, fifteen officers, their commander, and one stand of colours. The second time, which was, as before, during some skirmishing, having led my men on rather too far in the heat of the action, we were instantly surrounded: the rest of the troops, who saw us from a distance, gave us all up for lost: but, after a desperate conflict, instead of being all killed or taken as they expected, we broke the enemy's line on all sides, forced them to a precipitate flight, remained masters of the field of battle, and triumphantly carried off three brass field-pieces, two colours, a few prisoners, and

a great quantity of arms, such as muskets, with bayonets, pikes, and swords, which they had thrown away in their haste and bustle, to lighten themselves, in order to facilitate their escape. And the third time, which was one fine evening, when we were returning from some hard fighting, and fell in with a large party of the enemy, twice as big as our own, and who by their manner seemed to be escorting some prisoners : we immediately attacked them, and continued in sharp engagement for some time, without the victory seeming to incline on either side ; when, lo ! in the very middle and heat of the action, and just as I had severed the head from the body of a hideous personage, who looked more like one of the giants of old than any modern being ; I say, just as I had done this, I heard some one roaring and bellowing forth most manfully to me for assistance from behind ; and looking round, perceived it to come from the general of the brigade, to which I belonged, and who, as I afterwards found, had gone out reconnoitering by himself, and been snapped up by them as their prisoner. He was extended on the ground in the midst of a party of four of the enemy, who, afraid lest the fortune of the day should turn against them, and their prize escape unhurt, were on the point of shooting him. As no time was to be lost, I immediately galloped up to his aid, and with one blow of my sabre sent two of their heads rolling in the dust ; upon which the remaining two took to their heels, they having dis-

mounted for the purpose above mentioned. After giving him a few arms to defend himself, I returned to fighting, and in a short time, the enemy finding the general was rescued, whose capture was the only thing that induced them to continue the action so long as they did, retreated in as good order as possible towards their own army, leaving us in possession of the field and their wounded men; and it being pretty late, we did not care to pursue them, but returned quietly to the camp.

All this, together with the assistance of the general whom I had saved, was of great use to me in about five months, as I shall hereafter relate: and during this time I was not idle, but indeed very far from it; for a small expedition was projected, and set on foot, which was to consist of 2000 infantry and a few hundred horse, with two companies of artillery-men, and twelve pieces of cannon. The troops destined for this service being carefully picked from the rest, a general and grand review of the army took place; the result of which was, that a part of the regiment to which I belonged, and amongst which was my own troop, were selected from the cavalry, as having seen a great deal of service, and being well experienced, and were commanded by a Major. The infantry were taken from different battalions: and every thing being now equipped, and ready for our expedition, we set out, and went on for one whole week without experiencing any inconvenience. But on the first day of the

second week we entered an immense bog, which grew worse and worse at every step, and we began to find ourselves very greatly incommoded; for the cannon were either continually upsetting, or half sunk in the earth, it being so soft and marshy, that it gave way beneath their weight; and the horses that drew them not being in a much better predicament; what with the great caution which we were obliged to take in marching along, and notwithstanding which we were every moment sinking and sliding about, up to our knees in the mud, and the confused and enraged noise of the artillery-drivers, who using their utmost efforts and endeavours in vain to urge on their beasts, bellowed out of vexation and impatience, we at times presented a most laughable spectacle; and had enough to do to get to the end of the bog by midnight, and that with leaving four of the cannon some distance in the rear, to come up with us at their leisure. We therefore pitched our tents, with the intention of resting the remainder of the night from the fatigue of the preceding day, which we did; and the next morning at ten o'clock, the pieces of artillery we had left behind having arrived some time, and they together with the rest being a little cleared from the dirt, with which they had got half covered, the tents were struck, and we pursued our journey.

After marching about two hours, we came to a very large and thick wood: the trees indeed were not so very close together, but the spaces between

them were filled up with high shrubs and bushes; there was but one little narrow winding path, and even that was so frequently broken by the hawthorns and briars growing up in the midst, that it was scarcely to be distinguished. When we were arrived at the entrance, a doubt came into the heads of some of the officers, whether it would be safe to venture in, and pass through; and communicating this to the others, the army was stopped, and a grand consultation took place; when, after much debate and consideration, it was determined to march round the outside of the wood, rather than run any hazard; which we accordingly did: and we afterwards found it was very lucky for us, as there were no less than three thousand of the enemy's troops stationed among the bushes for the very purpose of which we were afraid. The fears which I have before mentioned we had were of an ambuscade; as, had we been attacked in the midst of all those thickets, we should soon have got in disorder, and been easily defeated.

After marching round the wood, which took us up some time, we went on; and, on the following morning, we entered an immense large plain, which we traversed two whole days, without meeting any thing worth mentioning; but on the third we distinguished straight before us, at the distance of about a league, the tops of tents; and, on approaching nearer, perceived the enemy's colours flying, and found it to be one of their divisions, consisting of 4000 men, which had encamped there, as being con-



venient for forage ; and upon this the officer, who acted as commander, drew the men up in a line, and marched down in front of them, sending a flag of truce with an offer of battle ; which they refused in a very insolent manner, sending back for answer, that they did not care to endanger the lives of any of the men belonging to so large a body of troops, when a handful of them might annihilate every one of us ; and as we should certainly meet some of their comrades before we could get back to our camp, they should not trouble themselves to come out and engage us just then ; with a parcel of such insulting language, which roused the indignation of the men to such a degree, that they would have fallen upon them with great fury that very moment, if the officers had not restrained and kept their ardour in check. The general not thinking proper to engage them at that time, we withdrew a little way, and pitched our tents at the distance of about two furlongs from theirs, where we continued encamped for nearly a fortnight ; during which time we repeatedly offered them battle, and which they as often refused. But at the end of that time, finding the patience of the men quite worn out, he declared his intention of making an assault on their camp on the evening of the following day ; and accordingly the necessary orders were issued to the different officers, and dispositions made of the troops, to be in readiness against the time came. But all this trouble was useless, and might have been

spared; for no sooner was it daylight next morning, than we perceived them drawing their men up in order of battle, at a short distance from the two camps; and we therefore immediately began to do the same. Our little army was drawn up in the following order; viz. the cavalry, of which we had about 600, formed the right wing, in which I, as belonging to the horse, was of course stationed: the centre consisted of the greater part of the foot, with the artillery-men and cannon, which were placed at intervals all along their front for a cover: and the left wing was composed of the grenadiers and light companies belonging to the infantry regiments, the grenadiers being placed at the extremity, and the light infantry next the centre, making in all about 2750 men: thus was our own army posted. The enemy's troops were stationed as follows: a part of their cavalry, of which they had at least 850, formed their right wing: their centre was, like ours, composed entirely of infantry: and their left wing consisted of the remainder of their cavalry, about 250, all the grenadiers they had, and one company of light infantry, two others being stationed a little distance in the rear as a reserve. They had besides all this contrived to erect a battery during the night on an adjoining hill, in which they had placed fourteen small pieces of cannon, so as to play on our left flank. This last incident, with their very superior numbers, gave them evidently a great superiority over us. However, every thing being ready, the

men waited with impatience for the action to begin ; and the first signal was a volley of musketry from the enemy's centre, which was immediately returned by ours, accompanied in full chorus by the thunder from all our pieces of artillery, which, being loaded with grape shot, did dreadful execution : and the trumpet after a moment sounding a charge, we galloped with great impetuosity on the enemy's wing which was opposite ; when the cavalry, after a little resistance, turned about, and took to their heels. The grenadiers and infantry made a better stand ; but after a stout defence much to their credit, not having any support, they were obliged to follow the example of the rest, when, all of a sudden, the two light companies, which I have before mentioned were stationed behind as a reserve, came up to their assistance, keeping up a spirited fire of musketry as they advanced, which for a moment held us in check ; but charging them in the midst, firing our pistols, and laying about them lustily with our great broad sabres, we soon overcame and put them to the rout, they only adding to the confusion and slaughter.

We pursued them over the plain for nearly a league and a half ; and then, having completely dispersed them, and taken a great number of prisoners, we returned to the field of battle, where we found every thing had gone on as well as with us ; the right wing of the enemy having charged our left, with the assistance of the cannon before mentioned, were received, while at a distance, with a well directed

valley of musketry, and, when they got nearer, at the point of the bayonet ; a most desperate conflict ensued, the one party endeavouring to drive their antagonist from, and the other endeavouring to keep, their ground ; and notwithstanding we had not above two-thirds the number of men they had, and those infantry, after combating for nearly half an hour, they began to get in disorder, which our men perceiving, charged them so vigorously, that the greater part turned their horses about and fled ; and the rest, having no support, soon followed their example. The officer who commanded the left wing likewise, as soon as he found they had the better, sent a small party of 40 grenadiers to storm the battery, which, after a slight resistance, they effected, and turned four against the enemy's horse, which were flying across the plain in disorder, and the remaining ten against their main body. The two centres, after exchanging about half-a-dozen volleys of musketry, came to a close action, and had a very sharp engagement, which was but just concluded when we returned : but at length, finding both their wings defeated, and seeing the very cannon which they had placed to annoy us, turned against themselves, about three-fourths fled after the horse, and the few that remained threw down their arms, and surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

This was the result of an engagement, which before it was begun seemed almost certain to end in our defeat, and in which we took the fourteen pieces of

cannon before mentioned, but which, for want of horses to draw them, we were obliged to spike, and leave on the spot, all but four; eight stand of colours, all the provisions, and every thing they had in their camp, which were very acceptable to us, and about 900 prisoners; but these last were more incumbrance than any thing else, and we left them behind the first opportunity, as I shall hereafter relate. And I must not omit to mention, that the major of the horse being killed at the first charge, the officer next in rank took the command, which made me senior captain.

And now this obstacle being removed, we pursued our journey, and marched on for three weeks without any interruption, only a few occasional skirmishes with the enemy's straggling parties; and at the end of that time arrived before a castle, to take which was one of the objects of the expedition. Having got up close, we summoned the governor to surrender, which he, having a strong garrison, with plenty of provisions, and being well prepared for a siege, refused; upon which we pitched our tents, planted our cannon, and in short prepared every thing, as if we were commencing a long siege; and continued thus encamped for eleven days; during which time we kept up a continual fire from all our artillery, for the purpose of at first making, and then enlarging, the breach. On the twelfth day an assault was deemed practicable, and I volunteered my services to head the storming party; and being

rather tall, acted the part of grenadier not at all amiss. In the evening, at a quarter past eight, our guns ceased firing; and at nine, the troops destined for the assault, being all assembled, silently formed and advanced, under a heavy fire of grape and musketry from the walls of the castle. Myself, with my drawn sword in my hand, accompanied by twelve stout grenadiers, who had all their pieces loaded, and bayonets fixed, led the way; about 150 yards behind these came between 40 and 50 more men, being the remainder of the grenadier company; and, lastly, at the same distance behind these, came 900 of those who had volunteered for the service, and had been chosen out of great numbers more that had offered. On arriving at the foot of the walls we planted the scaling ladders, and ascended, and arrived at the top of the breach without one of us receiving the least hurt, notwithstanding the enemy kept up a hot fire from within; but after this, I had not proceeded above two or three paces, when I was knocked down by the butt-end of a musket, and almost stunned with the blow. However, my soldiers not minding that, and supposing that I was quite dead, ran over me, and carried every thing before them at the point of their bayonets; so that what with that, and the continual showers of great stones that the enemy kept on rolling down from above, I ran a great risk of being crushed to pieces: and it was some time before I recovered sufficiently to extricate myself; and then it

was a long time before I could find my sword, which, with one thing and another, had got pushed some distance from me, and it, being nearly dark, was not over easy to be found; and as it was no use to go without arms, I thought I might as well stay still. I did find it, although I was, as I before said, a long time searching about; and as soon as I got it, which was just as the second party arrived at the foot of the ladder, I ran after my men, calling out aloud, and making as much noise as I was able, to encourage them. And it happened that I arrived to their assistance just at a fortunate moment, as, after fighting with unexampled spirit and bravery, they were just on the point of being obliged to give way before numbers more than twenty times as great; but my appearance animated them with fresh vigour, courage, and spirit. We contrived to maintain our ground till the second party came up, which I had informed my men was very near, and which the enemy no sooner perceived, than their courage sunk in proportion as ours rose; so that, after very little more resistance, they fled precipitately along the walls, all they met with joining them, till they came to a place before a large round tower, we following close at their heels: and here, being joined by a party of above 200 of their own troops, they made a stand; and their very superior numbers, with the threatening appearance they made with their bayonets presented against us, and showers of bullets and musket shot,

which they let fly, for a few moments checked our career. However, we did not wait long, but, collecting ourselves in a body, charged them three times successively with such vigour, that they once more took to flight, and never looked behind them till they came to quite the farther extremity of the castle, where all the remainder of their men were stationed, between and under cover of the fire of the guns belonging to two small towers. Here a most terrible battle took place, the men fighting so furiously with their fixed bayonets and the butt-ends of their muskets, that several had their pieces broken in two, and nothing but two stumps left in their hands: but at length, after a most furious combat, the spirit and bravery of our troops evidently began to prevail; and the third party just then coming in sight, the garrison threw down their arms, and surrendered without further resistance.

After hauling down the enemy's colours, and hoisting up our own in their stead, and firing six volleys of musketry, one after another, to let those in the camp know we were victorious, we proceeded to examine the contents of the castle, and found it to contain vast stores of powder, ammunition, and provisions, and to mount in different parts four and twenty pieces of iron ordnance, six of brass, three nine and two seven-inch mortars, and one howitzer, making in all thirty-six pieces of artillery of different sorts. While we were searching about likewise we found some large chests, which on



being opened were, to our great surprise, found to contain immense sums of money, which the enemy had lodged there for the payment of their troops ; and a part of the treasure being distributed among the men as a reward for the bravery and good conduct they had displayed on the occasion, put them in high spirits.

As the castle had been much damaged during the siege by our fire, we stayed there till it was completely repaired ; and then leaving 1000 of the infantry for a garrison, eight of our cannon, and all our prisoners, we pursued our journey ; and after marching about a fortnight, met with a large body of the enemy's troops, and had a sharp engagement with them ; but they, finding they were likely to get the worse, retreated, where we did not dare to follow them, to their own quarters : and about a week after we arrived at a town, where the enemy had concentrated vast stores of powder, arms, ammunition, and provisions, and various other articles necessary for a campaign, and which, though small, was finely fortified ; and would, if they had had just time to shut the gates, have held out against us a long time, if even we had been able to get possession of it at all ; but, as it was, we came so suddenly upon them, that our troops were in the middle of the streets marching about before they hardly knew we were near ; and the garrison, being ordered out to oppose us, after firing two or three volleys, laid down their arms without farther resistance ; so that we

were masters of every thing within the walls in less than an hour; and found in the grand magazine above 4000 stand of arms for infantry, that is, reckoning a musket, bayonet, powder-horn, and cartridge, for each man; 500 pikes, 800 large sabres for cavalry, as many carbines, 700 other swords, 1000 brace of pistols, 400 barrels of powder, and near 50 pieces of cannon, of different sizes, from six to forty-four pounders. There were besides this, three other smaller magazines; one of which contained 2000 stand of arms, 200 pikes, the same number of swords, 100 barrels of powder, and 30 pieces of cannon; the second, 1500 stand of arms, 150 pikes, the same number of swords as the other, 80 barrels of powder, and 20 pieces of cannon; and the third contained 1000 stand of arms, 100 pikes, and 40 barrels of powder.

But I will now return to my story. We thought that as the town was now in our possession, the principal thing was accomplished; but we soon found ourselves mistaken, for the castle, which was some distance without the walls, yet remained unsubdued. However, we remained above a week quite inactive, supposing that they would of course surrender in a few days; but at the end of that time, finding that if we went on that way, and did not use more vigorous means, we should be there for ever, a hot cannonading was commenced, which lasted for three days; when a breach being made, and judged sufficiently large, an assault was projected, and made

under the orders and directions of the officer who commanded the horse, with myself under him as an assistant. We mounted the ladders, and arrived at the breach without any accident ; but when we arrived there, we found out too late that it was by far too small, for it would not admit above four men abreast, and even those not without crowding. The reason that it appeared so much bigger while we were at a distance was, that it was more than three times as large at the top than at bottom, which we not thinking, did not in the least consider. However, as we had got so far, we determined not to retreat without effecting something : we therefore attempted to force a passage through the breach, which, after some time, we effected, notwithstanding the enemy opposed a considerable force to us ; when, seeing it was likely we might get possession of the castle, notwithstanding the great disadvantages we were under, they had recourse to stratagem, and pretending to retreat, as if they had been defeated, drew us unsuspectingly after them, till we suddenly found ourselves completely surrounded by the enemy's troops. This made us quite furious ; and rushing against the enemy's line that had closed on our rear, we came with such force against it, that it instantly gave way, and we were in a very short time completely extricated. But now we had got out of the danger, we resolved to give them one more charge ; and accordingly did so, but we were repulsed, with considerable loss. We therefore

made the best of our way back to the breach, and retreated, after losing about twenty or thirty men.

We no sooner arrived at the troop, and informed the commander the reason why the assault proved unsuccessful, than he ordered the great guns to be set to work ; and in four days the breach was so much enlarged, as to be capable of admitting more than twelve men abreast, when a second assault was made under the command of the major of the horse, as before ; but by some accident or other I did not serve in it : and I shall therefore not mention the particulars, but pass over it, by saying that it was perfectly successful, for the garrison surrendered to them after a very short resistance.

And now, after leaving all the rest of the infantry and the remainder of the artillery for a garrison, 300 being for the castle, and the others for the town, we pursued our journey, having now nothing but the cavalry, and one company of grenadiers, these last being intended for the taking, and, when gotten possession of, the garrisoning of a small fort, which lay in our rout homewards.

After marching many days, as we were descending a rising ground, we caught a glimpse of the enemy's colours, which were flying on the walls of the fort, and in two hours had a full view of them, for we were not at above 300 yards distance from it ; we therefore immediately formed the infantry in proper order, placing the cavalry so as to be a cover for them from the enemy's fire. They got close under the

walls : we then advanced, and mounted the ladders, which had been planted beforehand ; myself, having offered to head them, and which had been consented to, marched in front, carrying in one hand my sword, and in the other a colour. When we arrived at the top of the wall, the enemy received us with vigour, and a sharp fire of musketry ; but after a most desperate conflict, we succeeded in driving them from their ground, and they betook themselves to a precipitate flight along the walls, we following them close at their heels for some time without interruption ; when we were suddenly checked by a hot fire of musketry and grape shot from two small pieces of cannon, which were placed in a very commanding situation, that completely overlooked us ; but collecting our courage, we rushed upon them all at once, which they not in the least suspecting, but thinking that, intimidated by their formidable appearance, we should immediately lay down our arms, they fled in confusion and disorder, and took refuge in a small round tower, where a great number of their men were already stationed : so that what with those, and the fugitives that had run into it as a place of security, I might almost say by hundreds, it was become a very formidable place, and for a while resisted our utmost efforts, while we were exposed to a most annoying fire from the top and inside ; and what made it worse, and enraged the men almost to madness, was, that after all we could not return it, as they were completely screened and shel-

tered from our shot by the walls, there being a high parapet wall all round the tower ; so that when they had fired, they might pop behind it, and load their pieces again in safety. But after many ineffectual attempts, we at length succeeded in forcing open the gate, when the enemy, rather than be all killed, as they no doubt would have been if they had resisted, surrendered themselves into our hands as prisoners of war. But when the officer who acted as governor came up close, and perceived the smallness of the force by which they had been conquered, he was, as he was heard to express himself afterwards to another officer, ready to tear himself in pieces for vexation. However this was no use ; they had consented to capitulate ; and not only their arms, but their persons, were in our possession ; so they had nothing to do but lament it in silence.

Leaving our last company of infantry in the fort, we pursued our journey, nothing now remaining but the cavalry, and continued our march in peace and quietness, till we arrived within four days journey of the camp, when, passing through a narrow lane, we were met by a party of the enemy's horse, of at least double our number, and surrounded, notwithstanding we defended ourselves vigorously ; the men were just going to give way in despair, when, the major being killed, and the command devolving on me as being next in rank, I put myself at their head, and charged the weakest part of the enemy's line with such vigour, that they instantly

gave way, and we effected our escape; and in three days' time we arrived at the camp, after having been gone rather more than four months. About a month after we returned, I was promoted to the rank of major, and got the command of a battalion of six hundred men, royal grenadiers, which had been newly raised, and sent out.

After this, the first service in which I was engaged was the following: myself and my men were sent to the attack of a very strong castle, which was in possession of the enemy; and after some time, a breach was made sufficiently large and wide for our purpose; upon which, between six and seven one afternoon, all our cannon having been silenced beforehand, I assembled the troops, formed them in the order in which I intended they should advance, and distributed the command of the different parties to the officers I thought most fit. We then began our march; myself with twenty men and a serjeant led the way; about 150 yards behind these came 200 of the men belonging to my own battalion; and, lastly, behind this rather more than 200 yards, the rest of my battalion and two other companies of light infantry brought up the rear, making, with the addition of the two companies before mentioned, 750 men. When we arrived at the breach, we were received by a chosen party of men, armed with pikes and swords, so that we had a very great disadvantage to encounter; for the length of the pikes being near three times that of the muskets, they

were enabled to keep us off at a distance, and very much annoy us, while we were not able to get near them. But after grappling together for some time, I thought of a way to overcome this obstacle; and ordering the men to do exactly as I did, we all at once seized hold of the ends of their pikes, and at the same time, not letting go our pieces, we broke them in two, so that nothing but the stumps were left in their hands, which they immediately threw down, and drew their swords; but we now having the same advantage over them that they before had over us, we soon drove them from their ground, and they fled in great confusion and disorder along the walls, where we followed them as fast as we were able, killing and taking some of them at every step. But after we had pursued them for some time in this manner, a detachment of, or more properly all, their troops came up to their assistance; upon which they rallied; and both our other parties having by this time joined us, a most terrible battle took place, which, after some time, ended in the total defeat of the enemy's troops, those who were not either killed, disabled, or taken prisoners, running into the inner parts of the castle for shelter; and we attempted to follow them, but unfortunately arrived just too late, they having but the moment before closed the gate, which being iron, and of a very strong construction, resisted our utmost efforts. But after we had made several ineffectual efforts to force it open, perceiving that it would be an immense time before we attained



our object if we only exerted our efforts and strength on that part, I had the scaling ladders, by which we had ascended, pulled up, and planting them against the walls and towers on which the enemy were collected, got a considerable number of men upon their tops before they were in the least aware of it ; for they, supposing we should employ all our power against the gate, and not dreaming or having the least idea of our attacking them in that way, were all crowded down at the bottom to defend themselves there in case the door should give way ; so that when our men appeared above them, they were absolutely confounded, and in such a confusion, that they all threw down their arms, and surrendered without making any resistance.

The service being performed, I returned to the camp, and some time afterwards arrived at a critical moment with my men to the assistance of two of our squadrons of horse, which were engaged with twice that number of the enemy's, and who, after a severe conflict, were just on the point of giving way before superior numbers ; but coming round in the rear of the enemy's troops, we charged them so vigorously, that it instantly changed the fortune of the day, and they were soon completely routed, with the loss of above 150 men, and as many horses.

After this it was some time before I was engaged in any particular service : but the first thing remarkable enough to be worth mentioning, and out of the common round of service, was this : we had been

for some time engaged in the siege of a town, where it was supposed the enemy's chief store of powder, ammunition, and corn were laid up, besides an immense quantity of money already coined for the payment of the troops, and a number of bars and wedges of gold in their natural state for coining; and on this supposition, no means that could be thought of were left untried to get possession of it; and nearly all the artillery in the army were employed for some weeks in keeping a fire on the walls, but to no purpose; as fast as we made a breach, it was stopped again by the garrison; so that we began almost to give it over in despair; when a thought came into my mind, which was very extraordinary had never in the least entered the head of any of the rest; and this was making a mine. I immediately communicated this to the general, who approved of it, and gave me the direction of the work; and after many days, nay, some weeks, had elapsed, we completed three almost close together, and communicating; though it cost us infinite labour and pains to work our way into the earth, and make subterraneous passages, we being but ill provided with pickaxes, spades, shovels, and such articles necessary for digging. However, the three being finished, as I before said, and which was all I wanted, that did not signify; and every thing being now ready, the match was put in, and we all retired to a distance; when, after waiting about a quarter of an hour, the match being by that time

burnt out, they all three blew up together with a most tremendous explosion ; and a few moments after, a great part of the wall on that side of the town, with two towers, unable to withstand the shock, came down, with almost as much noise as the explosion itself. The men were therefore immediately assembled, and I formed them with all possible speed, not in those different parties, and they at some distance from each other, but in three double lines, not above a couple of yards one behind another.

When we arrived at the ruins of the walls, we expected to have found it a difficult object to get over ; but when we got there it did not prove so ; for we climbed up, and got down on the other side easily enough, and were much surprised that not a creature was to be seen. However, we readily attributed to the most favourable cause, that the enemy were so much dispirited, by the destruction and tumbling down of their walls and fortifications, that they did not dare oppose us, and intended to surrender the first time we came up with them. On this supposition we marched or rather ran on without any fear ; but had not proceeded above fifty yards, when, terrible to relate, the ground blew up in the midst of us, killing above forty men, and wounded in proportion ! This for a few moments perfectly confounded us ; but in a short time, our courage returning, we went on, and had not gone far, when a second mine, larger and much more dreadful, both in its appear-

ance and consequences than the first, exploded, killing, instead of forty, above a hundred men, and wounding about the same number that were before killed. This quite dispirited the men, and I verily believe, that if I had not used all the arts of argument and persuasion I could think of, they would have gone back then without attempting any thing farther. But after some time, they were persuaded to go on, and I once more put myself at their head ; but we had not proceeded far, when a third mine, more terrible than either of the former, took effect, killing, wounding, or disabling, above two hundred of the men, and completed the desperation of the rest ; and the enemy's troops, now perceiving that their mines had taken the desired effect, beginning to appear in great numbers at a distance, and I having no more than 250 men left but what had received some hurt, the greater part of these, together with those of the wounded that were able, ran back as fast as they could, leaving me, with two officers, four serjeants, a corporal, and twenty men, to receive the weight of all the enemy's troops, who now began to appear in all directions ; and rather than stay there, and be all killed, or taken prisoners, we followed the example of the rest, though, instead of making a confused and precipitate flight, we retreated in good order, till we arrived at the rubbish and ruins ; where to climb over we could not do it, and where indeed there was no occasion ; and then made the best of our way back to the camp. In this

way not one of us received any injury ; when if we had gone back all in confusion, it is more than probable that nearly all of us would have been wounded, if we had escaped so well as that ; for though our number was so small, the enemy dared not to venture with all their strength against us united, and so could only keep up their fire from a distance.

But to return to my story. When we got to the camp, I immediately retired to my tent, and began to consider of different things ; when it came into my mind, that all our disasters were our own faults, for we had gone so openly to work about our mines, that the enemy perceived what we were about ; and guessing where it would end, and what part of the wall would come down, they had in the mean time made the three mines in the road they judged we should take, and which had proved so fatal to us. I likewise considered, that if we intended to make another assault, now was the time, before the enemy should have it in their power to make more mines ; for that if we put it off, and gave them time to do that, we should only have a repetition of just the same work over again : so that with these thoughts in my mind, I immediately ran to the tent of the commander in chief, whom I found in bed, and half asleep ; but on my saying I had something of consequence to communicate, he got up, and admitted me ; and, when I had told every thing I had to say, perfectly agreed with me in my opinion.

Next morning therefore, as soon as it was daylight, all the troops that possibly could be spared from the army, which in all did not amount to much more than the number of men I before had in my battalion, were once more assembled, and we again began our march towards the town. We did not find it such an easy matter to get over the wall this time as before ; for the enemy, supposing we should attack them again almost immediately, had placed a treble line of infantry all along the inside, from one end to the other of the place, where the wall was down ; who, as soon as we made our appearance, opened a thick fire of musketry, at least the two hinder lines, for the front one stood quite still, with their bayonets presented, I suppose for the purpose of keeping us off at a distance. However, we did not mind that, but rushing down with great impetuosity, the greater part not in the least expecting any such thing, but supposing that, intimidated by their formidable appearance, we should immediately retreat, gave way, and fled ; and our men being thus enabled to attack the rest, both in the rear and flank, and they not having any support, soon followed the example of the others, and we in short carried every thing before us for the whole day ; by which time above two-thirds of the town were in our possession ; but the remainder, which was defended by a kind of citadel, or castle, and in which all the stores, powder, and ammunition, which were the original cause of the siege, were supposed to be lodged, still held

out : but this was likewise soon after stormed by myself, with a party of no more than sixty men belonging to my own battalion, but then they were fine stout fellows, and I think I may venture to say the best soldiers in the army.

We had now gotten possession of the whole town, and nothing now remained but the walls. This at first may seem rather strange, how we should be able to take a town, and at the same time not to have the walls in our possession : but when you come to know what sort of walls they were, it will no longer be at all surprising ; for at middling intervals, all along there were large round towers, furnished at the top with between three and five pieces of cannon, and contrived in such a manner, with small places through the side, that the soldiers might fire out without even being seen by us : but as they were not very strong, I thought of a way, which I knew must, if they had the least regard for their lives, soon oblige them to surrender ; and this was bringing up a few of the great guns from the camp, and setting them to play on the walls of the towers. This had the desired effect ; for rather than have the buildings in which they were tumble down about their ears, and bury them in their ruins, which would undoubtedly have been the case had they held out, the men in them surrendered one tower after another, till they were all in our hands.

We then began to search for the treasure and stores, which had been the cause of all this,

and found, to our great disappointment, of corn only five very small magazines, of powder only six hundred barrels, about fifty tons of cannon, and two-thirds that quantity of other shot, with twelve chests of large bullets; and of stores of arms, &c. there were not in all sufficient to equip six thousand men properly. The money likewise, which I believe was the principal object, did not amount to above fifty thousand pounds coined, and between two and three hundred pounds weight of gold uncoined, with nearly the same quantity of silver, when we had been taught to expect more than twenty times as much of every thing.

But before I go on in my story, I must not omit mentioning what a narrow escape I had in the first assault on the town, when the mines acted so fatally, as had I been but a few yards nearer the place where the third sprung up, that day would certainly have been my last; and as it was, the force and shock of the powder nearly threw me down.

The taking of this town was a terrible havoc and destruction to my men, as out of six hundred, which was the number my battalion consisted of at first, there were not so many as three hundred left, and this including the wounded; for without there were not much more than one hundred and eighty. A terrible falling off indeed! We were therefore sent to garrison a small fort, until such times as sufficient recruits could be got to fill up the deficiency. This



fort was the one we had taken last in the expedition, and which had been taken by the enemy, and retaken by our troops, no less than three different times since then : all this it was found was for want of having a sufficient garrison.

My battalion being now about the proper number, I was therefore, as I before said, sent ; and had not been there long, when the enemy, not knowing but what it was left in as bad a state of defence, that is, with as insufficient a garrison, as before, came down to attack us, with, or rather making, a most formidable appearance ; for they, in reality, had only between two and three hundred foot, sixty horse, and from four to six pieces of heavy battering cannon, with artillery men to man them. This insignificant body of forces, after, as I before said, making a terrible fuss and to do in the neighbouring country, came before the walls of the fort, and, finding us resolute, and resolved to defend ourselves to the last, pitched their tents, planted their cannon, and, in short, sat down for a regular siege. Their cannon being some of the largest sort, 44 pounders, and being kept continually at work, a breach was made in a very few days capable of admitting at least twenty men abreast, and we began to expect an assault every half hour ; I therefore made all the necessary dispositions for opposing the enemy, and placed about half the troops at the farther extremity of the fort, who were not to act but in case of a pressing necessity. I then placed the greater

part of the other half behind a round tower, that was situated in the wall of the fort, in such a manner, as to be perfectly concealed; these were to come out and assist as soon as there was any occasion: and, lastly, I myself with the few that remained, and which amounted to no more than four and twenty, went down to the breach, and stood with our bayonets presented, ready to receive the enemy as soon as they should make any attempt.

After waiting in this manner for about a quarter of an hour, we perceived them slowly advancing in three columns, answering to the number of scaling ladders which they had brought, and twelve men abreast to each column. Their advancing in this order gave us a very considerable advantage, as from their coming so thick it was hardly possible for us to miss our aim, and very often once firing killed two or three, so that we destroyed great numbers before they were got to the walls; but at last they arrived, planted their ladders, and ascended. However, we received them with a well-directed fire of musketry, and it was some time before they could get a footing; but when they did, more and more coming up every moment, I was obliged to have recourse to stratagem, and pretended to retreat; upon which they followed us without any order; and then we suddenly facing about, it put them in such confusion, that they all ran back as fast as their legs could carry them, and we killed or took great numbers. But this was not all; for a great many of

those who escaped safe as far as the breach, not having patience to wait until they could climb down the ladders, jumped from the walls, and perished that way: so that this repulse cost the enemy, with those who were killed or taken in their retreat, those who were killed before they got to the fort, and those who perished by jumping over the wall, above two-thirds of their men; and the rest growing discontented, they were obliged to be driven off. And accordingly, about a fortnight after the assault, a retreat was commenced; but in this, as in all their other schemes and projects, they failed; for perceiving their intention, I put myself at the head of a chosen party of men, and sallying out in their rear, cut the greater part to pieces, the rest escaping with difficulty into the woods. Three of the cannon fell into our hands; the other, as soon as the enemy perceived we were coming to attack them, they had spiked, and thrown into a ditch.

We now thought to have a little respite; but scarcely was the damage the fort had received repaired, and our stock of provisions replenished, (for though it was not near exhausted, yet it was very far from being full,) than the enemy, enraged at the failure of their men against a place which they supposed would be an easy conquest, sent a much larger body of troops than before; it consisted of eight hundred infantry, with orders to attack and force us to surrender without delay. When therefore they arrived, instead of taking such slow

means as those of making a breach, they immediately planted their ladders, and commenced the attack; so that I had scarcely time to put my men in the stations I intended they should occupy, before they were on the walls. I this time had recourse to a stratagem for our defence, which I knew had often succeeded wonderfully well; and this was, presenting no opposition at all at first; so that the enemy, supposing we were afraid, and did not dare make any resistance, ran carelessly on; when all on a sudden a large party of our men rushed out from behind a wall, attacked them, when a terrible battle ensued; but after some time, our men not having the support they expected, and which I had intended for their assistance, gave way, and fled, though they managed to keep in tolerable order. I was standing on the top of a tower, with my eyes all about me, when this was going forward; and perceiving no time was to be lost, I immediately descended, and, taking half the men, hastened round a part of the fort, by which I knew they must pass on the other side; and, waiting till they were gone by, came out, and attacked them furiously in their rear; and the men who were flying, finding assistance, facing them about, and plying them as vigorously on the other side, they were completely hemmed in, and a very desperate engagement followed. They laid down, or rather pretended to lay down, their arms; upon which we got out of our ranks, and dispersed, leaving only a small party to take off

and put the prisoners in a safe place; and even these, not having the least idea of what was going to happen, put their muskets aside; which the enemy no sooner perceived, than, snatching up their arms as nimbly as could be, they rushed through the men we had left, who, quite confounded, instantly gave way, and stood for some time stock still with amazement; and when they recovered their surprise sufficiently to follow them, it was too late, and they could only retake one or two; for they, after breaking through our men, had ran as fast as they could along the fort by the way they had come, and finding their ladders, which we had very carelessly left, still standing, they got down them, and nearly all escaped.

And now, finding it next to impossible to take us by assault, they were content to pitch their tents, and determined to starve us out: but finding how well the former sally succeeded, I resolved to make another; and accordingly one morning put myself at the head of about two-thirds of the men, which now amounted to two hundred in all; the wounded which we had brought to the fort being by this time perfectly recovered. The gates were opened, and we rushed out with such fury, that we surprised the enemy's centinels before they had time to give any alarm, and got in the midst of their camp before they knew we were attacking them; so that when they went to look out, they found us at the very doors of their tents: and this made them desperate;

so that out of the whole body of men, there were not so many as 100 who consented to lay down their arms. We got possession of every thing in the camp ; and after this remained undisturbed all the while we continued in the fort, which was about two months ; and then, sufficient recruits having been got to fill up the deficiency in my men, another garrison was sent, and we returned to the camp for more active service.

It was some time, however, before any thing remarkable occurred ; but the first time any thing happened worth mentioning was as follows : I was ordered to go with my men and dispossess one of the enemy's divisions, consisting of 2000 men, from a post which they had taken upon a rising ground, about two miles to the right of our camp, and who were suspected of having some hostile intention against us. We accordingly set out very early one morning, and by seven o'clock came in sight of them ; but they, by some means or other having got intelligence of our design, were all drawn up in battle array to receive us, withoutside their entrenchments. It would have been madness and folly in the extreme to have attacked them, thus posted as they were on an advantageous ground, and more than three times our number ; we therefore retired to a very thick wood, and resolved to watch them, after placing centinels on watch round the outside, till the enemy's patience was worn out ; which we did, and found it answer as well as we could wish ; for after

waiting rather more than two hours, the enemy's troops, supposing we had gone on, and did not intend to attack them just then, dispersed in all directions about the camp, wheresoever they chose. I therefore immediately re-assembled my men, and put them in proper order; for I had suffered them to quit their ranks, and walk wherever their curiosity might lead them, so as they did not go out of sight; and marching up the hill at a quick rate, killed the guards, and assaulted the camp so suddenly, that every thing was in a few moments put to confusion and disorder. The greater part of the men having put by their arms, ran here and there, up and down, looking for them, while the hurry and bustle they were in made them forget where they had laid them; they looked every where but in the right place; so that before they were prepared to defend themselves, we came up, and they were obliged then to surrender, without any resistance, whether they would or no; and all the camp, with every thing in it, was soon in our possession; and we found four brass field-pieces, with several other articles, that, if we had been able to have brought off, might have been of great service to us afterwards; but as we had no horses, nor any other means to convey them away, and could not have any for some time, though we sent immediately, we were obliged to spike the cannon; and the other things which I mentioned might have been useful, with the tents, and every thing else that would burn, we set on fire, and then

returned to our own camp with the prisoners, after having accomplished every thing that had been ordered.

Some time after, I engaged in an assault on the enemy's camp, which was made by my own men, and two battalions of light infantry; but as it would be tedious to enumerate the particulars, I shall pass over it, with only saying it proved perfectly successful, and we brought off 400 prisoners, six field-pieces, above 1000 stand of arms, ten ammunition waggons, and a number of other articles too numerous to give an account of.

After this, I served nearly six weeks without any thing remarkable happening; but at the end of that time I was raised to the rank of Lieutenant-Colonel in a regiment of horse, light dragoons, which was as good a station as I could have wished for, particularly as I always preferred being in the cavalry to the infantry; and I soon after got the chief command of the regiment, the officer who commanded before being killed by a musket-ball, which went through his head, as he was leading the men on to charge the enemy's troops in an engagement, which though not very important in itself, as I was engaged in it, I shall not omit to mention in its turn.

But before I proceed to that, I must relate a curious accident which befel me one day when I had been reconnoitring. After having finished what I wanted, and perfectly satisfying myself with respect to the situation of the enemy's post which I was



viewing, I felt a most ardent curiosity to take a ride, and explore the country a little; for, except going about when on duty, I had seen but little of it, and then I was so much taken up with the service I was upon, that I had but little time to look about me; I therefore sent eight of my guard home, with the account of the post, which I had surveyed; and taking the remainder, which amounted to twelve men, as a defence, I resolved to make a short tour, and examine the interior of the country a little. This to be sure was very foolish, considering I was in a place every where infested by strolling parties of the enemy: and it was, I believe, one of the greatest whims and piece of folly and extravagance that ever was committed by me. So I thought afterwards, but I did not consider it so at the time; to go I was determined. But it is of no use to tire your patience out with reflections on my conduct; I will therefore proceed to relate what happened to us, without further delay. My intention at first was to have stayed out only a couple of hours or so, but the country looked so delightful, and the weather seemed so fine, that we insensibly wandered on till we came to a small village. Here we stopped, and had some refreshment; but still I could not prevail upon myself to turn back; we therefore kept going onwards, till, never having been the road before, we lost our way; and endeavouring to find our way back by the road we came, we got into the midst of a thick forest, where, after wandering about for full two

hours, night came on, and increased our calamities ; but in about half an hour after it was dark, we, to our great joy, discovered a kind of track, which could hardly be called a path, and following it as well as we could, it at length brought us to the side of the wood ; and after travelling at full gallop for four hours more, we arrived at a camp, which we supposed to be our own, and consequently entered it without any fear ; and, would you believe it, got to the very middle of it before we discovered our mistake ! and then it was all owing to two centinels, who had quarrelled, and were swearing at each other, and making a great uproar, so that their language discovered to us the danger we were in. We retreated as fast as we could, without making any noise, for fear of waking the men, who were all fast asleep, and snoring so loud, that we could hear them quite plain. And now, knowing where we were, we arrived at the camp in less than an hour ; but I verily believe, that if it had not been for the piece of work made by the two centinels, we should have gone into the enemy's tents, and laid ourselves down in them, without finding out our mistake till it was too late.

A few days after this the action happened which procured me the command of the regiment. Our own with one other of cavalry and three of infantry were concerned. We had been sent out for the purpose of destroying some small batteries belonging to

the enemy, which had considerably annoyed some of the troops while exercising on a common ; and after having driven the soldiers who kept them from their post, burnt the batteries themselves, and spiked the cannon that were in them, we were returning homewards, when we were met by a body of at least 12,000 men, which we soon found to be the enemy, while our own force did not amount to above half that number at most ; we therefore took advantage of a rising ground, which happened to be just by, and posted ourselves, with the infantry in the centre, our own regiment for the right wing, and the other horse for the left. The enemy drew their men out in one long line, with the intention of out-flanking us ; and they did succeed in a great measure ; but perceiving their design, we let fly two volleys from our fire-arms, and then charged so vigorously, that they instantly gave way, and let us pass through without any opposition ; and then wheeling about, and falling upon them again in their rear, we in a few moments put every thing in disorder and confusion, and completely turned the fortune of the day in our favour in that part of the field ; it was in this charge that our Colonel was killed, so that the command now devolved on me. The left wing, perceiving our good success, resolved to follow our example ; but the enemy, being by that time got almost close up, it did not succeed so well, for they were driven back with considerable loss to their own

ground. The infantry fared better, for, receiving the enemy, as they charged them, at the points of their bayonets, they repulsed them with great slaughter. So having defeated them both at the centre and with us, we were enabled to send a considerable body of troops to the left wing, and soon turned the scale likewise in our favour there; so that the enemy were driven back at all points. We pursued them for near a league, and then returned to the camp.

After serving the usual time as Colonel, during which period I was engaged in several trifling actions, and much skirmishing, (but as they were of no importance, I shall not mention the particulars,) I was promoted to the rank of Brigadier-General; but the army being considerably reduced, as was no wonder with so long a campaign, and the enemy being so much humbled by their losses and defeats, they consented to a treaty of peace for four months, on terms which were very advantageous to us; and which were, that on the payment of a considerable sum of money all our troops should be withdrawn from their country, and we give up every place that we had taken, except two sea-ports, and which were indeed the most valuable: and all this was no more than we intended to have done at any rate; so that we might be said to have the money for nothing.

But I will now leave this subject, and return to myself and the army. The truce being concluded, the troops were immediately embarked, and set sail,

so that I had no opportunity of distinguishing myself that campaign; and after a voyage of rather more than three weeks, we arrived safe in harbour in my native country, which I had not seen for near thirty years, it being then the latter end of October.

## CHAPTER V.

I PASSED the winter, as you may suppose, very pleasantly at home ; and the next spring, the time of the truce being nearly expired, fresh preparations were made for carrying on the war with as much vigour as ever ; and another army was assembled, containing in all above 40,000 men, which was a great deal larger than what we formerly had, the troops before being assembled in a hurry. In this army I was appointed to the command of a division, containing 4000 infantry and 1000 horse, with 20 pieces of cannon, and artillery-men sufficient to manage them ; and every thing being now quite ready, the troops were embarked on board the transports, and set sail with a fair wind on the first of March, being, what was rather extraordinary, the same day thirty years that I first set out on my military career.

I will here deviate a little from the history of my own adventures, to make a few observations, which may perhaps be necessary. Had the officer, to whom the chief command was intrusted, and who was the same as in the last campaign, set the troops on shore in the same place as before, the year would have

most likely terminated in an advantageous peace; but, elated with our former good success, he must needs set them on land in quite another part of the country, notwithstanding myself and the greater part of the other general officers openly declared our opinion, that it would not answer; the rest were all secretly against it. But this was to no manner of purpose; for he declared, in an assembly of all the principal officers in the army, that he was certain it would be productive of such good consequences, as the nation had never before experienced. What all this famous good luck was to be he did not tell us, and it proved very different in the end.

After a voyage of five weeks and two days, we arrived at the place where he proposed we should encamp, which was close to the sea, but in other respects of all places I think I might say worst suited to our purpose; and we soon began to experience the ill effects; one of our divisions having been sent out for some purpose, with which I was not particularly concerned, they were met about a mile from the camp by a body of 12,000 of the enemy, who immediately attacked them, and a furious battle ensued; but after some time, our men were driven back at all points, and fled in great disorder; and had they not luckily had the good fortune to arrive at the camp just as they did, would have most likely been all cut to pieces.

Some little time after this, my own division was sent out to dispossess the enemy of a post, a hill, or

rather ridge of small hills, which, if we had once gotten, it might have been of great use to us; but when we arrived there, we found it impracticable with so small a force: we were therefore returning without having effected any thing, when a body of the enemy, half as big again as our own, suddenly emerged from behind a thick wood, which had hitherto concealed them, and formed themselves in a steep bank, with the evident design of attacking us. We therefore formed ourselves in a line of battle as fast as we could, with the cavalry on the right wing, the grenadiers and light infantry on the left, and the rest of the foot in the centre. We had scarcely time to do this, when the enemy sent forth a most tremendous shower of bullets and musket shot, and the moment after their cavalry came galloping down sword in hand, and charged us with great fury: but to be explicit in my account, the action lasted from twelve o'clock in the morning, which was the time it began, till night, and then darkness separating us, we returned to our camp, and they to theirs; and though my division, being composed of the best men in the army, did not fare so badly as the other, yet, taking the victory by the number of killed and wounded, the enemy had considerably the advantage: and both these you must know were not for want of spirit and bravery in our troops, for a body of finer fellows perhaps never was; but merely owing to our disadvantageous station.

But not to tire your patience with a long detail of



defeats, disasters, and losses, it will suffice to say, that at the end of six months our army was reduced, by fatigue and hardships, to nearly one half its original numbers. Fresh calamities kept heaping upon us every moment, and we found ourselves in a most distressing predicament, hemmed in on every side by the enemy, except towards the sea ; all communication with our supplies of provisions and ammunition cut off ; whichever way we turned there was a superior army ready to receive us, who had such advantageous positions at their command, as were alone almost sufficient to give them the victory with only equal numbers ; the men consuming daily with disease, for we were not even free from that ; and at one time our communication with the sea was stopped up, but with great difficulty we recovered it, being our greatest hope. The commander in chief now perceived, too late, how wrong he was in encamping there, and resolved, I might say by the unanimous voice of the whole army, to risk every thing on one grand battle, which if it proved successful, why then so much the better ; and if not, we had nothing to do but retreat to the sea-shore as well as we could, there embark, and escape that way. We therefore sent notice to the vessels to be in readiness ; and the day after it was finally determined upon, a flag of truce was sent to the enemy's camp with an offer of battle, which was immediately accepted : and accordingly the next morning all the troops, except a small party which we left to take care of the

camp in our absence, were marched, and drawn up in the following order : my own division, which I before said was composed of the best men in the army, constituted alone the right wing, with the cavalry at the extremity, and our flank defended by above thirty pieces of artillery, to keep the enemy from surrounding us, and which was indeed what we most had to fear : the centre, which contained above 12,000 men, whereof about one-third were cavalry, was drawn up in a treble line, that is, with a single line of cavalry in front, as a kind of breast-work covering, or whatever you may be pleased to call it, and a double line of infantry a few paces behind, stationed so as to be able to fire through the intervals of the horse with ease and security : and the left wing, which contained 6,000 men, about a quarter cavalry, stood in the form of a crescent, or half-moon, with their flank defended by artillery, as with us ; the horse were likewise placed in such a manner, as to be able to charge out on the enemy through the paces between the cannon in the intervals of loading, which, the army being much reduced, and not having a sufficiency of men to man the guns, sometimes took up near a quarter of an hour.

And now having informed you how our own army was posted, I shall, after giving a short sketch of how the enemy's troops were stationed, proceed to give an account of the action itself. Their left wing, which contained 12,000, and were all the best

of their troops, was posted on a rising ground, with a rivulet about five yards wide to defend their flank; the centre, which contained between 18 and 20,000, who were all infantry, except two squadrons of horse, that were posted one at each extremity, had two rows of artillery, each containing above thirty pieces in their front; and the left wing, which had the same number of men as the right, was composed entirely of cavalry, except five companies of grenadiers, who acted more as a reserve than any thing else. Every thing being placed thus, we waited with impatience for the action to commence; and in about a quarter of an hour a most tremendous discharge of artillery from the centre of the enemy's line, where, as I have before said, they placed all their cannon, gave the first signal; and in an instant nothing was to be heard or seen but large columns of smoke, long files of men falling dead, wounded, and disabled every moment; loud volleys of musketry coming in such rapid succession, as almost to stun one; and the clashing of arms resounding from those who were engaged at a distance; and I confess I was almost suffocated at first with the strong smell of gunpowder. After a short time, perceiving my division would be terribly annoyed by the enemy's fire if we continued standing still, I resolved to charge them; and accordingly, putting myself at the head of the horse, as they did not seem inclined to come down from their advantageous ground and attack us, and ordering the in-

fantry to follow me, marched forward, notwithstanding the great disadvantages we were under, which; when we approached nearer, we found in its true light; if we attacked them in front, we had a steep bank to climb up first, and if we attacked them in flank, we had the rivulet before mentioned to pass over, before we could get to them. However, we had not long to consider, so I finally determined to do both; and taking the horse, who could not be of any use in climbing up the banks, and half the foot, took a circuit round, and so came on the side of the rivulet, and then wading through, with the infantry up to their waists, and the horses up to their breasts, we, after an obstinate conflict, all got on dry ground; and the other party attacking them at the same time in front, we, after some time, succeeded in completely driving them from their ground: but a large detachment being dispatched from the main body to their assistance, they rallied, and made altogether such a formidable body, that I thought it prudent to secure a safe retreat while it was in our power; and had scarcely time to get back on our ground, when they charged us in their turn, and came down with such impetuosity, that my infantry could not stand it, and gave way; but sending a party of horse to their support, order was soon restored, and we continued acting upon the defensive with tolerable success. Our left wing being charged by the enemy's right, after an obstinate resistance, was forced to give way, at least the infantry; but the cavalry having got

the better on their side, and hastening to their support, they soon recovered their ground, but were obliged only to act in their own defence; and did not dare move off their ground for fear of being surrounded. And the two centres, after exchanging about twenty volleys of musketry, came to close action, which lasted till night; which surprised us all in the situations last mentioned. We therefore separated; and thus ended the first day's battle, without any decisive advantage on either side, the men lying under arms all night.

The next morning, as soon as it was day-light, we were again drawn out in exactly the same order as before, only the enemy removed some squadrons of horse, which they had in their right wing, to the left, and exchanged them for an equal number of infantry. At ten o'clock the action commenced, and by twelve it was as hot, if not hotter than any time on the preceding day. The enemy's left wing charged us with such immoderate fury, that we were driven back above twenty paces, so that four of the cannon fell into their hands; and recovering, we with difficulty maintained our ground; but after some time we at length succeeded in completely repulsing them. It had been well for our cause if we had been as successful in other quarters; but the left wing, on being charged by the enemy's right, was, after an obstinate resistance, thrown into disorder, and the cavalry, not coming up timely to their support, only increased the confusion, and the whole body fled for

shelter behind the centre, so that above thirty pieces of cannon were taken. The centre, after standing a short time, perceiving they would soon be all destroyed if they continued there, determined to try and make a charge; but climbing up the hill, were repulsed with great loss, so were obliged to be content. But after some time, perceiving their numbers were greatly thinned, the enemy came down, and they got into close action, as on the day before; but after some time they were thrown into great confusion, and fled, with the remains of the left wing, towards the camp.

Things were just arrived in this terrible state, when the enemy were preparing to charge us a second time; and I was now in a most critical juncture, expecting every moment to have a body of men down upon that, which a short time before we had enough to do to resist with all our force united, and yet obliged almost to send a party of men to support the flying troops; however, I had not long to consider of it; so I sent 400 infantry, and half the number of horse, to their assistance, and resolved to make shift as well as we could; and this, though but a handful, when compared to the enemy's centre, and which, though much reduced, still contained 14,000, yet secured our men a safe retreat; for they checked the enemy so much and so long, that the troops who were flying, in the mean time collected themselves in a body, and thus, with our little party in the rear, retreated safely to the camp. In the mean

time we were defending ourselves with the utmost difficulty. And now perceiving all our men were got away, I did not know what should keep us in the field of battle; so I first ordered the artillery away, and when that was got off safe, retreated myself with the men, and, night coming on fast, retired unmolested.

This though not literally so, yet could not be considered otherwise than in the light of a terrible defeat, and was to us a dreadful stroke. As soon as night was set in, a general assembly of all the principal officers was held; and, after a consultation of half an hour, it was determined to retreat to the sea shore, and there embark: accordingly the tents were struck, and they, with the artillery, ammunition, stores, and every thing that could be removed, sent on board; and when this was done, the remainder of the troops, amounting to 10,000, were embarked, and we set sail about three o'clock in the morning; so that by day-light we were quite out of reach of any thing the enemy could send after us, though we could easily perceive them crowded in great numbers along the sea shore; and they fired several cannon, I suppose in hopes of some of the shot reaching us, but not one did; we did not receive the least damage.

After sailing about a week, we arrived at a place abundantly fruitful, and not at all infested by the enemy's troops. Here the commander in chief determined the men should stay a short time to recover

from their fatigues: we were accordingly set on shore; and after resting a few days, my own division was re-embarked, and set sail, with orders to go to the place where we had been encamped in the former campaign, and prepare it a little for the rest of the troops, as they were to follow the first fair wind. After sailing for five days, a terrible gale of wind arose, which drove us before at its mercy for some time; and the pilots, mistaking a large point of land, which they saw at a distance, for one by which we were to anchor, instead of using their utmost endeavours to keep us from it, as they ought to have done, steered the ships towards it, and did not discover their mistake till it was too late; for an immense wave took us up, and carried the greater part of the vessels with great violence on the sea shore, where they stuck fast in the sand; and the remainder only escaped the like fate by turning about a little to the left, and so slid past the point, close under the shore; and when the violence of the storm abated a little, came to close anchor under the shore. Two of the ships that were wrecked went to pieces in half an hour; but the men having got the boats out in readiness, no lives were lost: and as soon as the storm was quite over, I, who was in one of the struck vessels, disembarked all the boats and crews from not only my own ship, but all the rest.

When we were all safe on shore, our first consideration was what was best to be done: so, after a short thought, we went down to the sea side, to see



if the vessels might not be got off; but found to our great mortification, that out of ten, it was only possible with one; however, we set about removing the one, and with much labour and difficulty got it afloat. I then immediately sent the crew and soldiers that had been in it before on board; and our next consideration was what to do with the other ships; but after a short consultation within myself, I removed all the stores, powder, and ammunition, out of them into the others, and set them on fire, to prevent at least their falling into the hands of the enemy. I then put the crews of the shipwrecked vessels on board the others, and ordered them to proceed on their voyage, which they did: and when they were all out of sight, I began to think of our march, and that very evening ordered the men to be in readiness to set out the next day. Accordingly next morning, at ten o'clock, we began our march, being a body of 1,500 infantry, and 600 horse, who were disposed in the following manner: 300 of the horse, with the remains of two companies of grenadiers, formed the van division; the rest of the infantry made the centre; and the remainder of the horse brought up the rear; in this manner we marched on. But before I give an account of what happened to us, it will be necessary to give a short description of the place in which we were.

It was a very large point, or, in other words, a small peninsula of land, which jutted out several miles into the sea; the space across the farther end,

I mean that towards the land, was entirely filled up by two large mountains, except one little narrow pass between, which led into the interior country, and, what was still worse than this, large parties of the enemy were quartered at the top of both mountains. After marching two hours, we arrived at the entrance of this pass, regretted too late having burnt the vessels, and perceived the dangers we had to go through; for though we could not have got the ships off again, we might have pulled them to pieces, have converted the timber into rafts, plenty strong enough for our purpose, and so have gone round the mountain, and landed in the interior country with ease and security; but the action was done, and could not be recalled, so we were obliged to make shift as well as we could: and had not proceeded far, when we began to perceive the enemy's arms glittering at the top of the mountain; and a few moments after down came a tremendous shower of huge stones, large trunks of trees, and great pieces of rock, which came rolling and tumbling into the midst of us, carrying slaughter and destruction wherever they went, and making us one scene of hurry, bustle, and confusion: some tumbled over the dead bodies of those who were crushed, and they, in attempting to get up, were knocked down by others who were coming along, and did not perceive them: so we continued in this state for above half an hour, before I could get them in any kind of order. We then proceeded; but had not gone far, when a second shower made us as bad

as ever ; and, in short, so it kept on, as fast as we recovered a little, another shower sent us into confusion again, till we were obliged to seek for some place to shelter ourselves, and ran into the caves and caverns which were in the sides of the mountain, and of which there were great plenty. Here we remained all day, not daring to get out for fear of being crushed ; but as soon as it was dark, I ventured to draw out my men ; and sending a party of twenty on before with lighted torches, and having the same number dispersed in different parts of the division, we once more set out ; and though we had not now the fear of being crushed, we had other difficulties, though not indeed quite so bad ; for the roads were so rough, and the light afforded by a score or two of torches so dim, that we could not take above twenty steps without stumbling over stones ; and some of the men fell into deep holes, and never joined us again ; yet, notwithstanding all this, we by day-light found ourselves, to our great joy, quite clear of the pass, and marched on in quietness for about half an hour, when the rear division gave notice that there was a body of troops coming full speed after us ; and, on looking round, we perceived it to be true ; for the enemy, enraged to find we had escaped, had sent this party in pursuit of us. We therefore put ourselves in a posture of defence, and a pretty sharp engagement ensued ; when, after fighting about an hour, they thought proper to withdraw, leaving 300 of their men dead on the field,

while we did not lose half that number. We then went on, but had not gone above ten miles, when a fresh difficulty presented itself ; and this was a wide and deep river : we therefore encamped all that night, to consider what was best to be done. There had been a bridge, but on our first appearance on the point, the enemy had sent a party of men to destroy it, so that there was nothing but the fragments left ; however, we collected these together, and, though we were but miserable artists, contrived to make two little flimsy rafts, capable, as we thought, of holding five men apiece ; but the day being pretty far advanced when they were finished, we fastened them to the shore for the night : and it was fortunate for us that we did ; for if we had not got them in, they would have sunk with our weight as soon they got into open water ; and this we found out by the following accident, or rather providence : in the middle of the night a violent high wind arose, which, throwing them both on the bank, dashed them all to pieces. We were at first terribly disconcerted at this ; but when we considered more maturely into the matter, we found we had good reason to congratulate ourselves as we did, not knowing who might have gone first, and those would certainly have been drowned.

But as it was no use remaining there inactive, I dispatched a small party along the banks, to see if there were any means of conveyance over ; and they returned next day with the following account:

that about two leagues up there were a quantity of large trees already felled, and that they had gotten six peasants to come and work for us, on condition of being well paid : I therefore added some men to the party, and sent them back ; and in the evening they returned with the six workmen, and forty of the largest trees they could select ; so we set hard to work, and, though but miserably provided with tools, in three days we completed eight good substantial boats, capable of holding twice that number of men each : and having dismissed the peasants, I sent the cavalry over first, as they could swim well enough on their horses ; and then filling the boats with the infantry, we thus got over by little and little, till not one man remained on the opposite shore. When we were all safely landed, I returned the boats bottom upwards, and let them float wherever chance might direct, and then proceeded.

But it will suffice to say, that after marching full a week, during which time we went at the rate of from five to six leagues a-day, and which was very well for infantry, considering the weak state to which we were reduced, and encountering almost incredible hardships and danger, we at length arrived in sight of the rest of our army, which was encamped in exactly the same spot as in the former campaign. But here we had another obstacle to encounter, still greater than any of the former ; for they were hemmed in on all sides, at least towards land, by the enemy, and we were reduced to near one-third the

number we had when we set out; by two engagements we had since crossing the river, and one thing or another: so I determined to wait till night should screen us from view; and as soon as it was quite dark, rushed out, killed the centinels before they knew we were near, cut our way through the enemy's camp, with very trifling loss, and arrived safe at our own. I found every thing in terror and confusion, and on enquiring, found that another great battle had been fought, in which they had been entirely routed, their commander, with four other generals, which was all they had, slain; besides upwards of 200 other officers of different ranks, and more than half the men, so that my arrival was as joyful an occurrence to them as to us; and I was unanimously chosen, by both officers and men, to the chief command. I therefore, without delay, ordered every thing that could be removed on board the vessels, which were lying at anchor close by; and then going on board myself with the troops, we set sail before day-light; and after a voyage of three weeks, arrived at our own country, with nothing left, out of an army of 40,000 men, but an insignificant body of only 5,000; and of my own unfortunate division, only 400 infantry, and 120 horse.

And thus ended a campaign, from which the greatest expectations had been entertained; and some had even confidently asserted, that it would conclude with the entire subversion of the enemy's coun-

try. How miserably were those hopes and predictions disappointed! when instead of this, a disadvantageous truce, though not indeed near so much so as might have been expected, for a twelvemonth, was the consequence. But though we were to open appearance at peace, yet vigorous preparations were in reality making to carry on the war, as soon as ever the truce should be concluded; though only myself, and a few other officers, whose assistance was absolutely necessary, were admitted to the secrets.

The year passed swiftly away, and in less than a month after the truce was expired, to the great surprise of not only the enemy, but our own nation, a formidable army of 60,000 infantry and 12,000 horse was assembled, the command of which was entrusted to my now honourable self, so that I was quite a person of consequence. And every thing requisite for the campaign being sent on board a fleet of transports, provided expressly for the service, we embarked, it being then about the latter end of February; and, after sailing rather more than a month, we arrived at the place where we had been encamped in my first campaign. Here we cast anchor; and being disembarked, I sent the ships away; and our first care was to find a place convenient to encamp in; and after a short search, we found a place that had all the things requisite, viz. plenty of fresh water and forage, healthy, and close to the sea, and convenient to make irruptions when-

ever we pleased. Here then we pitched our tents, the enemy's camp being about two miles below ours.

And I will now give a short sketch of my proceedings in this campaign; mentioning only the most remarkable events, and omitting all such as I think will not afford amusement. We being completely settled by the 20th of March, I took a general review of the troops, divided them into twelve divisions, appointed them generals to command them, and distributed the artillery equally, so that each division had twenty pieces: this done, I commenced my operations next day; but nothing happened worth mentioning the whole of that month. The beginning of the next, I formed a plan of attacking the enemy's camp; and sent the first, third, and a part of the fourth divisions out one night for that purpose; but one of their guides falling into a ditch, another into a hole, and a third tumbling over the trunk of a tree, so that he could not proceed, they returned without effecting any thing. This, however, did not discourage me; for the next night, having procured a number of torches, I resolved to go in person, as an encouragement to the men; for though they did not much need that, yet I thought by setting an example, it might contribute considerably to give us the advantage. We accordingly set out, and soon arrived in front of the enemy's camp, which was defended by a rivalet; this we had to pass, and the centinels, who had seen



our torches at a distance and suspected something, having spread an alarm, there was a large party ready to oppose us on the opposite bank, which we had to encounter up to our waists in water; but after some time we got on dry ground, though not before I had received a musket-ball in my neck, a wound with a bayonet, and several other slight cuts in different parts; we then drove every thing before us without opposition for some time; but a fresh party coming up, they rallied, and I, being in the most conspicuous station, received a shot in my wrist, and a few moments after, another in my side: still, however, I continued fighting, being resolved not to give over while I could stand, but a third ball entering my leg, the shock threw me down. My men were then charging, so I called to them to push on; but the enemy, who had seen me fall at a distance, supposing I was dead, their courage and spirits returned, and my troops were just on the point of being repulsed, when, perceiving their situation, I snatched my sword up, which lay a little way off, and attempted to rise, when, to my great joy, I found I could walk without inconvenience; so, running up as fast as I could, I soon got to them, calling out at the same time, as loud as I could bawl, not to give way, when a little exertion on their part might give them the victory: my appearance instantly restored them to order; we penetrated the enemy's ranks through and through, and put them completely to the rout. But I now began to perceive the alarm was

spread through the whole camp, and we had best make our escape with what we could, while it was in our power ; so hastily collecting what we could carry away, and setting fire to the rest, we were preparing to make our retreat, when a large detachment of cavalry, with half as many infantry close at their heels, appeared hastening in full speed to attack us ; so that I was obliged to put the men in order, to serve at once for retreating and defending ourselves, and ordered the cavalry to keep in the rear as a cover. I had scarcely time to give these commands, when the enemy, having got within 300 yards of us, let fly a most tremendous volley of carbines and musketry : a shot entered my head, and I fell down senseless. When I opened my eyes, I found myself in my own camp ; and I afterwards found, that the soldiers, enraged to desperation, seeing their commander, as they supposed, fall dead, resolved to carry me off, or perish in the attempt ; so closing round me, they, after a most desperate conflict, succeeded in getting off not only myself, but the greater part of the spoils we had collected. When I had got to the camp, a surgeon having extracted the ball from my head, I recovered my senses ; and my wounds, though numerous, being none of them bad, I was in a little more than three weeks pretty well recovered : but in the mean time, I put in execution a scheme that had long been in my head, and that was of sending parties of men into the country.

Nothing remarkable happened all the rest of that month, and the whole of the ensuing one ; but in the middle of June, I received dispatches from one of my officers in the country, saying, that they had intercepted some letters, which stated that the enemy's armies were so much harassed by ours, that if the reinforcements they expected did not speedily arrive, they must either make a retreat, or risk an engagement. Upon this, I immediately sent orders to all my detachments to join me, and in less than a week had them all in the camp. I then sent an offer of battle to the enemy, which they, hoping their reinforcements would soon come, refused ; but I resolved either to force them to this, or a retreat ; so taking the greater part of the artillery down opposite to them, I commenced a furious bombardment, by which they were so much annoyed, that at the end of three days they sent to say they would meet us next day at such a place, which they mentioned. Next morning, therefore, I marched thither with my men, and drew them up in the following order : the 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th divisions formed the centre ; the 11th and 12th the left wing ; and the 7th and 8th the right, with 100 pieces of artillery in front ; my other divisions were stationed as a reserve ; so that I had near 70,000 men in the field. But the enemy's army presented a still more formidable appearance ; their right wing contained 14,000 ; their left 20,000 ; and their centre 50,000 men, with 100 pieces of cannon.

In the beginning of the engagement we contented ourselves with distant volleys of musketry ; but finding they did not seem disposed to come from their ground, I ordered my right wing to charge, pretend to be repulsed, and so draw the enemy out of their ranks after them, and then suddenly facing about, throw them into disorder ; this they executed so well, that the enemy were completely defeated in that quarter : and as soon as they were quite dispersed, our men fell upon the flank of the centre, which was by this time attacked in front likewise, so that they soon fled too ; and nothing remained but the right wing, which being beset on all sides, and having no support, followed the example of the rest in a short time ; so that out of the whole army, only a body of 12,000 infantry collected about two leagues from the field of battle, and kept together. I therefore, as soon as ever the troops had taken a little refreshment, went with a party of 12,000 men in pursuit of them ; and after marching four days, came up with them as they were crossing a heath ; upon which they were prepared to receive us ; and I, elated with my success, rushed in just as I was ; so that it was no wonder we were entirely repulsed and dispersed, myself escaping with only 250 foot, and 60 horse. We remained concealed in a wood for four days, and then ventured out, in hopes of getting back to the army : we fortunately succeeded, and the men joining us in straggling

parties on the road, we had nearly as many when we got back as when we set out.

As we had failed in this, I removed every thing out of the enemy's old camp into our own, and we continued quite inactive for above a month; when a centinal ran in a great fright one morning, and said there was an army of the enemy twice as large as the other approaching, and they were already within two leagues of us. However, these pitched their tents half a mile off; and the next day, to my great joy, a fleet with reinforcements came to us. And now deeming myself a match for the enemy, I sent them a challenge, which was accepted; and they, confiding in numbers, suffered me to choose the ground. So next morning the troops were drawn out on the sea-shore, and I placed my vessels so as to play with their guns on our adversaries. The action then commenced, and lasted, without intermission, till night. The next day and the third it was renewed with unabated fury; but towards the latter end of the third day the ardour of the enemy's troops visibly declined, and in short, they gave way at all points, and fled in the utmost confusion, leaving 25,000 men dead on the field, 40,000 more voluntarily laid down their arms, and 20,000 were taken prisoners in the pursuit; all their generals but two, either killed or in our hands; and they had not in short above 300 officers of different ranks left altogether. After continuing about a

week here, a deputation arrived from the enemy, consisting of their two remaining generals, and six other principal officers, who came to treat on terms of peace. These being agreed on and signed, and garrisons left in the different forts and towns which were given up to us, there was now no occasion for the rest of the troops. I therefore embarked them, and, after a pleasant voyage, arrived at our own country. Here the greater part of the men were disbanded ; and myself, after receiving an appointment of £10,000 pounds yearly, dismissed from service. After this I continued travelling about from one place to another for ten years, when I settled in my present abode, and became acquainted with you, my Lords.

Don Castellano thus concluded his narrative ; and his guests, after wishing each other a good night, retired. But the next evening, being assembled in the habitation of Signior Anelgro, he began his narration as follows.

---



## CHAPTER VI.

### *The Adventures of Signior Anelgro.*

**M**Y adventures at sea commenced when very young ; for at twelve years of age, being got into a bad state of health, the physician who attended me declared, in his opinion, that a voyage to the West Indies would do me a great and essential service. My father therefore, who had himself in his younger days been a captain in the navy, but had given it up for near two years, immediately made the necessary preparations, and hired a passage in one of the vessels of the fleet, which was luckily just then going out. After waiting a week for a fair wind, we were routed out of our beds one morning to go on board, and set sail.

We proceeded for rather more than a fortnight without any thing remarkable occurring ; but about the middle of the third month, a squadron of the enemy's vessels, containing two 62-gun ships, five frigates, and three large corvettes, appeared in sight, making all sail towards us. Our convoy consisted of only two frigates and a sloop ; nevertheless, we immediately prepared for resistance, and eight of the largest and stoutest ships in the fleet, among which was our own, were instantly selected



from the others, and drawn up in a line of battle, while the rest were ordered to proceed on their voyage; a command which they did not wait to receive a second time, but crowded up all the canvass their masts and yards would carry, to try and get clear off, as they deemed our capture inevitable. We were drawn up in the form of a crescent, the smallest and weakest vessels being placed in the centre, and the strongest on the outside. We stood next to the outermost ship on the right; in this situation we waited the enemy's attack; who no sooner came within gun-shot, than an ill-directed fire of grape-shot was opened from them, which did little or no execution, so miserably did they direct their fire; but we, waiting till they got a little nearer, then played our broadsides with such spirit and vigour, that scarce a shot failed of doing some mischief. They came about a pistol-shot and a half distance from us, then divided into two columns, and advanced in that manner, with the intention of breaking our line; but in this they were completely foiled; for by a sudden manœuvre we fell into the like order, and sailed up to meet them. We soon came to close action, and a terrible battle commenced. Our own ship, which was the largest in the whole fleet, that is of merchantmen, mounted 23 guns, and carried a crew of 100 men, besides the passengers, and was engaged with a frigate of 36 guns, and 240 men. We continued grappled together in close combat for near an hour, during

which time, notwithstanding my father kept on calling to me continually to keep quiet in the cabin, I must needs be running continually on-deck to see how the state of affairs went on. Running up and down in one of these excursions, which were foolish enough, and occasioned entirely by a most ridiculous curiosity to be busy, I happened to go almost close to the side of the vessel, and perceived, to my great astonishment, a boat containing an officer and twenty men attempting to board us, which, owing to the thick smoke, had escaped the observation of the mariners, so that one man was already in, and another half way. I was for a minute quite confounded with this unexpected sight; but recovering myself, I snatched up a musket which happened to lay just by, levelled it at the foremost man, and shot him dead; then stepping up, I gave the other such a horrible blow on the head with the butt-end of my piece, that he tumbled down motionless into the boat; upon which the others, supposing there was a large party of men ready to receive them, which the thickness of the smoke concealed from their view, or that they were stationed somewhere in ambush, rowed away to their own vessel, without attempting any thing more.

Elated with this exploit, I ran about from one place to another all over the deck, till a sudden turning of the ship making me giddy, I was obliged to go down into the cabin, and lay myself up in my bed; where I remained the rest of the night, which

lasted about half an hour longer, when the frigate, having lost all three of her masts, with fell three-fourths of her crew, and being much damaged in the hull, inasmuch that there was above three feet water in her hold, struck her colours. The two 60-gun ships which were engaged with our two frigates, finding themselves much damaged, and likely to get the worst, spread all their sails, and stood off as fast as they were able: four of the frigates and one corvette followed their example. Two of the other vessels, which were the corvettes, one mounting 24, the other 36 guns, and both carrying crews of from 140 to 160 men, and which were engaged with three merchantmen of 16 guns and 80 men apiece, were so much injured, that an escape that way would have been impossible; they therefore, after a desperate resistance, surrendered; and the remaining vessel, which was a frigate, took fire, and blew up in such a sudden and unexpected manner, that the vessel with which it was engaged had but just time to get out of the way, and escape sharing a similar fate; and some of the men who were nearest the explosion were almost thrown down with the shock.

We then, as the business of the fleet was ended, and not taking of prizes, pursued our voyage for a week, when one night such a violent gale arose, as completely separated us from the rest of the fleet, and drove us, we knew not where. In this state we one morning espied land, and sailing up a little creek,

found it to be an island inhabited by nothing but monsters and wild beasts; however, we cast anchor by the side of a great wood, and there, as it was getting dusk, resolved to wait till morning: and it was fortunate we did, for no sooner was it dark, than such a fearful howling and roaring arose, that not one of the men got a wink of sleep the whole night. However, as soon as it was day-light, the monsters who occasioned this noise retired to their dens, and every thing was quiet. The captain therefore sent his boat on shore, with twenty seamen, and as many of the passengers who chose; and I must needs be of this number. Finding I was resolute, my father accompanied me; and having got on shore, we dispersed different ways; myself and my father, three gentlemen, and two of the sailors, kept together. I was armed with a musket, small sword, a powder-horn, and some shot; and after wandering till noon, we sat down, and made a repast on some biscuit and cheese we had brought with us. We then began to hunt for provisions, and in pursuit of them straggled some distance from each other. I started a fine deer, and pursuing it with all my might and main, went out of both sight and hearing of my companions. At length I laid the deer dead; but on finding myself quite alone, began to utter bitter lamentations, and kept on calling out as loud as I could; but, alas! no one answered; and, faint with my exertions, I sunk down on the ground, and gave vent to my grief in tears. Thus I continued for near two

hours, when, recollecting that this would do me no good, that it was past five o'clock, and that my best way would be to try and find some place of shelter before night came on, or that otherwise I should be devoured, I got up, took my gun in one hand and the deer in the other, and began my walk. After trudging on for an hour, I came to the place where we had our dinner, and found it quite deserted. I therefore passed on; and had not gone far, when, passing a thicket, I thought I perceived two furious eyes fixed full upon me from the midst; terrified almost out of my senses at this, I threw down the deer, and set off running at full speed. Fortunate it was for me that I did; for scarcely had I gone twenty yards, when out sprang an immense tyger, who, enraged at missing its object, set up a hideous growl, and came tearing after me. Frightened and half dead with fear, I clambered up a large tree, the branches of which afforded me a thick shelter; but my pursuer laid himself down at the foot, and there remained; upon which presenting my piece, I took my aim so well, as to shoot him stone dead. I would fain have gone down, and walked on then, but it began to get dusk; so I stayed where I was, and, being very tired, soon fell asleep, but was disturbed by hideous visions. I dreamt that I was attacked by two ferocious monsters, and in lifting up my arm to give a vigorous blow with my sword, I struck my hand so forcibly against a branch, that it awoke me. It was some time before I

could dispose myself to sleep again ; and just as I was getting in a comfortable dose, I was alarmed by a prodigious rattling, which seemed to come from almost close to me ; and on looking out through the leaves, was horribly affrighted to see two hideous-red fiery eyes, as it were, ascending the tree with a slowish pace. I was at first utterly confounded, and struck motionless with terror ; but recollecting it must be some monster who was coming up to devour me, I drew my sword, and began making most hearty blows, thrusts, and cuts, on what I judged must be his neck ; suddenly the eyes disappeared, and something descended to the ground with a great noise, which confirmed me in my suspicions, and led me to suppose I had killed it : nevertheless, it made such a terrible impression on my mind, that I continued awake the whole night ; and had the pleasure of hearing the wild beasts come smelling and scratching against the side of the tree a great number of times.

When morning came on, I perceived that the cause of all my terror and fright was a large serpent, who lay with its head nearly cut off, and half eaten by the animals that had been there at the foot of the tree. Though I well knew it was dead, yet it was some time before I could summon sufficient courage to venture down : however, at length I did, and began my walk ; and now, it being the beginning of a day instead of the end, I took my leisure, and gathered some wild fruits for breakfast.

of which indeed I stood in great need, having eaten nothing since the preceding morning, and then very little. At length I arrived at the place where we had come on shore, but the boat was gone; however, by firing my gun, and making signals, the people on board saw me, and sent a boat to fetch me; so I at last got safe back.

We continued at the island for above a week; but I had enough of rambling excursions, so did not go on shore, though indeed I was told there were many things worth seeing; but the ship being repaired, and a sufficient stock of fresh provisions got in, we continued our voyage, and after sailing a fortnight, we arrived at our place of destination. Here we disembarked with all our goods; and having found a suitable house, the country was so pleasant, that we continued there above two years: but at the end of this time, my father finding the air did not exactly agree with him, we took a passage back to our own country in the homeward bound fleet, and after a prosperous voyage, arrived there.

These two voyages had given my mind such a propensity to the sea, that I could turn it to nothing else; and accordingly about a year after I entered a midshipman; but as a detail of the trifling events which happened to me in this rank will afford no entertainment, I will pass them over, with saying, that when I had served my time and two months over, I was made lieutenant, and soon after ap-

pointed to the command of a cutter of 14 guns and a crew of 40 men, besides myself, and one midshipman, who acted as a lieutenant does in larger ships. In this I was sent to cruise on the enemy's coast, and was out a month without meeting any thing, insomuch that the provisions being nearly spent, I was proceeding homewards, when a large merchantman of 20 guns and 80 men came in sight: we therefore immediately made all sail towards it, and they, perceiving we were very inferior in force, lay to, and prepared for defence. No sooner did we get within gun shot, than a furious firing commenced, and in a short time we came to close action. I then took all the men that were not employed to work at the guns, and which amounted to seventeen, and placing them in advantageous stations about the ship, armed with muskets, they kept up a continual fire of small arms on the enemy. This project succeeded to admiration; for scarcely had we exchanged a dozen broadsides, when it was plainly evident, from the great decrease of numbers on the deck of the enemy's vessel, that they had lost one third of their men. I therefore assembled my seventeen men, and, arming ourselves each with a musket and sword, I placed a part as a cover, that the enemy might not see what we were about, and with the rest hauled out the long boat, and then all getting into it, we rowed down to the side of their vessel, climbed up, and all got in without being perceived. I knocked down the captain; the main



who came after shot the mate; and the rest of the crew fled to the quarter deck, where, not being able to go any further, they surrendered.

We then took our prize in tow, and returned to port; where after refitting a little, we again went out, but had still worse luck this time than before; not a single vessel did we meet with. However, I determined not to go away without doing something; so, manning my boat with the mate and 20 men, I went on shore one afternoon, and proceeded up the country. In a little time we came to a small fort, which we immediately attacked, and carried by assault. We then went on, and in a short time arrived at a little town, which by some means or other had been apprised of our design, and was prepared to receive us: we however soon drove in the feeble resistance they opposed; and after collecting money to a very considerable amount from the public treasury, retired; from thence we came to our own ship, and returned to port.

However, as soon as we had taken in a fresh supply of provisions, we once more went out; and in four days met with a cutter of 18 guns and 65 men, to which we immediately gave chase, and in a short time came up with them, when a most furious combat ensued; and the smoke was so thick, that we could scarcely see twenty yards off, and could indeed but just see each other's vessels, in order to direct our fire. Presently a shot came, and carried away above half of the mast, which was a terrible misfortune.

Considering our vessel was a cutter, and had but one; but then, in return, a broadside from us knocked down the whole of theirs with a great crash, and another soon after carried off the bowsprit, with a great piece of the stern, so that the water flowed in the cavity it made in great abundance. At length, their vessel being quite a wreck, eight of their guns dismounted, and full five-sixths of their crew killed, they struck their colours, and surrendered. Upon this I went on board to examine our prize, and found it presented a miserable spectacle; indeed the mast, bowsprit, and stern, as I have before observed, were gone; heaps of dead men, intermixed with broken boards and planks, which lay promiscuously on every side; there was above four feet and a half water in the hold; and the sides were so miserably battered, as to be almost in pieces. We therefore immediately removed the wounded and prisoners of their vessel into our own, (foreseeing it must sink in less than half an hour,) and then began taking the most valuable things out; but we had not been employed at this twenty minutes, when we perceived it was going fast, and therefore made all haste out; and hardly got in the boat, when it fell to pieces. When we got into our own vessel, we found it in not a very great deal better state, though indeed it had lost only part of the mast and a piece of the bowsprit; we likewise knew that it would keep together till we got to a port, provided there was no storm; but then, on the other hand,

we were certain it would sink if one did happen ; a miserable event enough to look forward to ! However, after stopping up the holes a little, we made all sail homewards, and fortunately arrived safe on shore, when our vessel fell in halves, from halves into quarters ; it kept gradually decreasing, till not two pieces of timber were left together ; so we gained nothing by this victory but a few prisoners, and trifling articles, and the destruction of our ship. It was some time after this before I could get any kind of employment, so many wanted places, and so few appointments were to be had ; but at length, with the assistance of a captain under whom I had served, I got a little brig of 10 guns and 30 men ; but a miserable thing it was ; the planks and beams of which it was composed were verily eaten up by the worms, and the ropes and sails were so miserably tattered, that I was enabled only to take little paltry vessels all the while I was in it, which was a year and two months ; nay, and sometimes I was in great danger of being taken myself. The cabin in which I slept was not ten yards in diameter, and stank with a confused mixture of all manner of smells, tar, pitch, gin, grog, and a musty scent occasioned by the decayed and worm eaten state of the vessel : moreover my nose, not having been accustomed to this, had an exquisite sense of all kinds of scents, whatsoever they might be, and to me this was insupportable. However, at length, to my great joy, I was made commander, and appointed to a sloop of

26 guns and 140 men, with which I was sent out to occupy a station at Japan, in the East Indies. Here I continued some months, without any accident; but at the end of that time the fever broke out in my vessel, and raged with such violence, that not one of us escaped having it, and above one third of the crew died. At length, however, we succeeded in entirely exterminating it; and a short time after I received orders to quit my station, and go and make discoveries. Accordingly I did so; and, after some time, entered on seas never before explored; and continued sailing in them for above a week, when one night such a violent storm arose, that we were carried up and down in the dark without knowing where in the world we were going. Suddenly a wave dashed us against a sunken rock, and twenty seamen, supposing the ship would instantly sink, jumped into the sea for the purpose of saving their lives, and perished: the moment after another wave reached us, and set the vessel afloat once more.

The next morning the violence of the wind was in some degree abated; but we were still driven about, and continued to be so for a week, when, to increase our misfortunes, the men grew very sickly; and in a fortnight the storm increased worse than ever, when we descried what we thought was an island; but a miserable island to be sure it proved to us; for when we got about twenty yards from it, we were suddenly carried with amazing rapidity

against what then appeared to us a jutting point of rock. In an instant the ship was covered with sea and foam, and we thought of nothing but saving our lives. The boats were hauled out, and the first lieutenant, with five midshipmen and 25 seamen, got in the largest; one midshipman and 6 sailors in the smallest; and myself, the second lieutenant, one midshipman, and 15 seamen, in the remaining one. The two first were soon upset, and all in them lost; but we were more fortunate; after pulling hard at our oars for above an hour, the boat was thrown aground, and we had but just time to take the few things out of her that we had been able to bring along with us, when it tumbled to pieces. Having collected the timber, we looked for some place to shelter ourselves from the rain, which descended in torrents, and found, to our great sorrow, what we had supposed an island was only an immense rock, barren of every thing but shell-fish, sea-weed, and fowls, and a few planks, the remains of vessels that had before been wrecked there. At length, however, we got under a hanging rock, and there determined to remain all night. But the rain having ceased, and we being very hungry, I with four men went to look for some provisions; and fortunately met with a fine turtle, which was so heavy, that it required three to carry it; and myself and the other man having loaded ourselves with shell-fish, and some brace of sea fowl, we returned to our companions, who awaited our coming back with

extreme impatience. On examining our turtle, we found it to contain a large quantity of eggs; and having roasted these and every thing else we had brought, by a large fire we had provisionally made, we made as excellent a repast as any one would wish to have, though there was not quite so great a variety as on a nobleman's table.

We then went to sleep; and the next morning, going to get something for breakfast, we perceived to our great joy that we might get many useful things out of the remains of our ship; for when it had struck on the rocks, instead of going to the bottom, as we had expected, it had split; one half was gone we knew not where, but the other still remained. We therefore immediately went to the place, and swam to the rock on which it was; for it had not, as we before thought, struck on a point, but a large rock, separated from the main one by a channel of about twenty yards wide. Having got in, we first searched for tools, and at length found the carpenter's chest: we then looked for arms, but took no more than was sufficient to arm us all well; and as fire-arms would be of little use without ammunition, we collected all we could find, and then searched for provisions. We hardly got every thing of provision together, when the sky became overcast, and warned us to be gone as fast as we could: we therefore set about making a raft to carry our goods on shore, and in a short time one was finished, and in three journeys ourselves and

every thing else were safe. But we had scarcely hauled our raft on shore, when a violent storm, accompanied by thunder and lightning, came on, and we were completely drenched before we could get to our old shelter under the rock.

Thus we lived for above a month; at the end of which time we found it such an insufficient habitation for us, that we began to think of building a hut, as a more ample shelter from the weather; but when we set about it, we found we had not near enough timber for such a purpose; and were therefore obliged to desist, and put up with inconveniences for the present. After continuing in this state for about two months longer, during which time we were continually finding pieces of wreck, I was much surprised one morning to perceive, on the edge of the rocks, where I had been searching for shell-fish, a large quantity of oysters, which on opening I found to contain large quantities of very fine pearl. I therefore collected them with great care; but the taste being bad, as in all that species, and their value not being known, they despised them, and would not take their share; so I had the whole to myself.

About nine weeks after this, and after we had been near six months on the rock, for it was nothing more, we set about building a boat to convey us away, which was completed in two weeks more; and having victualled with turtles, and put every thing in, away we rowed; and, after some time,

descried a vessel; and though we could not come up with it, we knew we were in the frequented parts of the world: and in a little time after got to Japan; where, to make up for my misfortunes, I was appointed to a tolerable frigate. But disasters still pursued me; owing to the carelessness of the cabin boy, my vessel was set on fire at sea, and we, after endeavouring in vain to stop the progress of the flames, were obliged to take to our boats before the ship blew up. I had in my own boat 12 men besides myself, and to keep us we had two small barrels of salt beef, 18 or 20 pounds of bacon, one cask of brandy, and one of water, with two dozen ship biscuits; and in case we should be out long, our daily allowance was limited to half a biscuit, two slices of bacon or beef, and rather more than a quarter of a pint of brandy and water mixed. This was at first, but afterwards we were obliged to be still more sparing; and we were just going to give ourselves up to despair, when a vessel appeared in sight, which, on our firing a gun, lay to till we came up, and took us to the place for which they were bound, viz. a small port in Japan, where I found letters informing me of my father's death, and that I must go home directly if I wished to secure my estates. Accordingly I did so; but as soon as ever I had settled my affairs to my perfect satisfaction, I began to look out for employment, and was appointed to the *Red Lion*, a fine 74 gun ship,



almost new, with which I was sent out to cruise on the enemy's coast, and watch one of their fleets.

About a week after I had been on this station, a violent high wind obliged us to cut our cable; and they taking advantage of this, came out of port, but were soon dispersed by a storm. As soon as ever we could, I returned to my station, and, finding them gone, went after. In a little time we came in sight of a large ship of 100 guns, which, on seeing us, tacked about, and prepared for action. A furious battle ensued; but at length we were victorious, and carried our prize into port; where I was a short time after promoted to the rank of Rear Admiral of the Blue, and appointed to the command of a squadron of two seventy fours, and five frigates, beside my own vessel, in which I hoisted my flag as chief commander with this little fleet. I was sent out to South America, in order to intercept a fleet of the enemy's, laden with gold and very valuable plate, which was expected to come home that way, and about that time. Here we cruised for above a month, and no fleet appeared, so that I began almost to give them up, and suppose that either they did not intend to come that year, or that they did not mean to go home that way; and being very much in want of fresh water, I left the smallest frigate to watch, and with the rest of the vessels proceeded to a small port, which I had heard was about fifty leagues along the coast, and there sent a

party of men on shore to fill our casks with water ; which had like to have proved fatal not only to them, but the whole fleet ; for the inhabitants, who were chiefly natives, taking it as an heinous offence that we should presume to land without first sending notice in great form, came down in number above four hundred to attack them ; and they not being more than 35, were obliged to take refuge in the boat, and row as fast as they could to the ship ; and the people threatening to set us on fire, we were obliged to weigh anchor in a hurry ; and had not gone many miles, when we met with the frigate I had left on the station, which informed us, that the fleet would certainly pass in a week at farthest, as they had intercepted a vessel with some of our men prisoners, who gave them this information. I therefore sailed to the place ; and had scarcely got there, when the fleet appeared in sight, consisting of twenty-six sail of merchantmen, under convoy of two line of battle ships, and a large frigate. But you are not to suppose that these were like common trading vessels, for they were all equal in force to a very large sloop ; so that this fleet, instead of being inferior, was greatly superior in force to us ; and drew itself up in line of battle to oppose us. But putting myself at the head of the fleet, we boldly sailed up, penetrated through them, dispersed their ships, and in short completely defeated them. Their convoy, with fifteen of the other vessels, we captured ; two others blew up, and a third sunk ;

the rest escaped with great difficulty, we being so encumbered with prizes as to be unable to follow them ; and how to get them all home we knew not, as there were more than two prizes to each of our vessels, if we divided them equally. I therefore destroyed the three ships of war, which were most damaged : and as their office was to protect others, they had nothing of any particular value on board ; and taking the rest in tow, made all sail to try and get safe in port before winter ; and after being buffeted about a great deal, and meeting with several severe storms, in one of which my best frigate with two of the prizes that were under her care, were separated from us, and lost, we arrived safe and sound in harbour, where we continued during the winter months.

But as soon as ever spring came on, having refitted a little, we again went out ; and after cruising about a fortnight, came in sight of a squadron of four sail of the line, three very large frigates, and one sloop, which, on perceiving us, hoisted enemy's colours, and bore towards us with the evident intention of attack. I therefore drew up my ships in a line, with their broadsides presented at full length ; and as soon as ever we came within reach of gun shot, a most furious cannonading commenced, which did great destruction on our part, and but little on theirs ; and in a short time we came to close action. My own vessel, the *Red Lion*, was engaged with an eighty gun ship and the sloop,

which carried twenty guns, the one besetting me on one side and the other on the other; so that I had enough to do to engage and keep off both at once; as one retreated a little, the other advanced, and obliged us to turn our attention that side; and as fast as that was driven back, the other taking advantage of the greater part of our force being withdrawn from their side, would come up and attack us with as much vigour as ever; and in short we were in a miserable plight. The other two seventy-fours were engaged with ships of an equal force, one of my frigates was in close combat with a sixty-gun ship, and the rest were encountered all of them with vessels of superior force, both as to size, number of guns, weight of metal, and number of men. Thus we continued engaged for above four hours, when victory seemed beginning to declare in favour of the enemy; my own vessel was so much shattered that it was scarcely manageable, great pieces, with all the masts, and nearly the whole of the sails and rigging, being shot away, besides above half of the crew being killed, it was with the greatest difficulty we could keep off the enemy; and the seamen were just going to give themselves up to despair, when a fortunate broadside carried away at once the main and fore-mast of the 80 gun ship; and the sloop rolling over on one side in such a manner that it was nearly upset, and they spreading all their sails as fast as they could, left us engaged with the other ship alone. Encouraged by this sudden

turn of good fortune, we exerted our utmost endeavours; and in a short time the enemy's remaining mast gave way; and they struck their colours. In the mean time two of my frigates, finding themselves in a bad way, had recourse to an expedient, which in the end contributed principally to the victory: for manning one of their boats with half a dozen men; and filling them with rockets, dried faggots, and various combustibles; sent them towards the ship with which we were engaged; where having stuck a good portion of their combustible compositions, they passed on, went to another vessel; and did the same to that; then rowed to another, till they had been to the whole fleet, always leaving a lighted torch to set the things on fire; and at last came to the 80 gun ship, with which I was in close action; when, finding that already so much battered that it could not hold out long, they went back to their own ship, and the battle went on. On a sudden the enemy's vessels found themselves shaken with a most violent explosion, occasioned by the fire-works our men had put, on taking fire and blowing up, and looking out to see the cause, found themselves on fire, and the flames raging with great rapidity; they were therefore obliged to divide their force, one part being employed in quenching the fire, and the other in keeping off their adversary. The two vessels that were engaged with those that invented the scheme, not having a sufficient number of men, when thus

divided, to repel the spirited attacks of our men, were boarded, the crews driven from place to place till they could go no further, and then surrendered. The two ships that were in combat with my seventy-fours, after endeavouring in vain to extinguish the flames, struck their colours; and the rest did not discover they were on fire till it was too late, and the crews had but just time to take to their boats, and our ships to disengage themselves; when the flames reached the powder magazines, and they blew up.

Thus did we obtain a complete victory; but I was now in the greatest perplexity; we were above a hundred leagues from any of our ports, and our vessels so miserably mauled and shattered, that I was certain they would not ride another storm. It was quite out of the question to take our prizes along with us, and indeed if we could they would not have been worth it. I therefore set them on fire; and as the longer we stayed out, the more likelihood there would be of misfortune befalling us, we made all sail homewards. Fortunately it was fair weather all the time; and in about a week and a half we were all safe at anchor.

Having repaired our damages, I went back to my own country; for I had continued ever since in America; and was there sent out to watch an enemy's fleet, which had been for some time past hovering on the coast, and committing great depredations on the trade. After cruising four days, we came in sight of them,

and on perceiving us, they made all sail to try and get off; but a calm intervening frustrated their intentions, and enabled us to come up with them, when a most furious engagement commenced, which lasted full four hours and a half; but at length confusion and disorder was seen in the enemy's ships, their line gave way, five of their vessels struck, two blew up, and three escaped; while we, taking our prizes in tow, returned triumphantly to port, where I was promoted to Vice-Admiral of the White. But a truce of three months being concluded just after, I was put out of commission, and remained so until the recommencement of hostilities, when I was once more reinstated in the command of my former fleet, with the addition of two line-of-battle ships; and with these out I went, and had not been gone many days, when one of my frigates, which was a mile and a half before the rest, made signals that there was a fleet of the enemy's in sight, and at the same time lay to till we should come up; upon which I dispatched a boat to see what was their force, which soon returned, and said there were fourteen sail of the line and three frigates, viz. one ship of 100 guns, two of 80, eight of 74, two of 70, and one of 60; the frigates each had 44 guns. The names and force of the ships under my command were as follow; *Brunswick*, *Jupiter*, *Queen*, *Tremendous*, and *Macedonian*, of 74 guns, besides my own ship; the *Venus* of 44, the *Barbadoes* of 38, and the *Eagle* and *Skylark* of 36;

making in all ten. But this disparity of force, instead of depressing our spirits, served only to raise them, as we should thereby have an opportunity of displaying our valour against numbers nearly double our own; and having formed my vessels in a kind of triangle, we boldly advanced with sails spread and colours flying; while the enemy, confiding in their superiority of force, waited to receive us in the most miserable manner; several of their vessels were some hundred yards behind others; some lay all on one side; and some, which was still worse, lay athwart the stern of another, preventing by that means one half of the other ship's guns from playing. We therefore broke their line at the first onset, tacked about, and falling upon them again in the rear, put every thing into confusion and flight. My own vessel, after engaging and capturing a large 74, came up with and attacked the admiral's ship of 100 guns, which, after a severe engagement, was forced to strike, having lost their main and mizen and greater part of the foremast, besides four feet water in the hold: five other vessels were captured, two burnt, and one sunk: the others, finding all hopes of victory lost, too late endeavoured to disengage themselves from their disordered state, and had but just sufficient time to escape. I, having put sufficient men in our prizes to man them, sailed into harbour to refit, and give notice of my victory, which was celebrated by great rejoicings, and my fleet augmented with six line of battle ships and two sloops;



viz. the *Royal George* of 100 guns, the *Bellona* of 80, the *Sapphire*, *Star*, and *Dreadnought* of 74, and the *Rosamond* and *Marmaduke* of 26. But the peace of a year being signed just then, I had no opportunity of distinguishing myself till the war again broke out, and was then sent out to cruise. I had not been out long, when a fleet, consisting of eighteen line of battle ships, appeared in sight; which, on perceiving we were resolute for action, tacked about, and formed in three divisions to receive us. I therefore put my vessels in the same order, and taking the lead of the centre, we bore up in this manner; and broke their line at the very first onset: their vessels were in less than twenty minutes completely dispersed, and eight of them captured; and having left four of my ships to take care of the prizes, I with the rest of my fleet pursued the enemy's vessels to the very mouth of their harbour, and there blocked them up, being resolved, if possible, to force them to another engagement. But all I could do they would not come out, being in truth afraid of us. I sent half my ships away, as if they were going home, giving them orders as soon as it was night to come back, and conceal themselves behind a huge jutting rock that was at the side of the port. This had the desired effect; the enemy's vessels came out and attacked us, while we, who were well prepared to receive them, kept retreating, till we had drawn them out above half a mile at sea; on a sudden our concealed vessels came out from behind

the rock, attacked them in their rear, and cut off their retreat : surprised and confounded as they were, a most desperate battle ensued, which at length terminated in our favour. We returned to port ; the final peace was signed, and I was honourably dismissed from service ; and, having settled here, had soon after the pleasure of becoming acquainted with you, noble Gentlemen.

Here the three other friends arose, and departed. But the next evening, being all assembled, Signior Sebastiano began as follows.

---

[illegible]

## CHAPTER VII.

*The divers Travels and Adventures of  
Signior Sebastiano.*

**F**ROM my earliest youth my father, who was a nobleman of extensive fortune and inheritance, spared neither pains or expence to instil into my mind a profound knowledge of the sciences, and had always given me reason to expect, that some day or other I should, to increase my knowledge of the world, travel into foreign countries. Accordingly, when I had attained the growth of manhood, he one day addressed me in the following words : My son, said he, I am now verging on the decline of years, and would wish to see thee comfortably settled before I leave this world ; for this purpose it is necessary thou shouldest first complete thy studies ; and to this end I have purchased a small vessel, and hired a crew, with which thou mayest traverse the ocean, and go from place to place with comfort and security. At this proposal I was in an ecstasy of joy, readily gave my assent, and the next morning was agreed on as the period of my embarkation. So impatient was I for the time to arrive, the hours appeared like ages, and I could not sleep the whole night for imagining the scenes I was to go through.

At length, however, to my great joy, day-light appeared ; up I got, dressed myself, went on board, weighed anchor, and set sail, and by eight o'clock in the morning were out of sight of land.

For the first week I was obliged to keep chiefly to my cabin, being much annoyed by sea sickness ; but afterwards, growing more accustomed to the motion of the vessel, I did very well, and used to employ my time chiefly in walking about or reading on deck ; but one evening that I was employed in this manner, the air suddenly became suffused with a most sulphureous closeness, and the sky darkened with clouds of a most threatening and hideous aspect ; the thunder likewise rolled in awful peals at a distance, and the lightning, just beginning to be discernible, darted its forked flashes across the watery surface of the deep ; vast flocks of sea fowl, hovering over our heads, joined their dismal screams, together forming a most discordant concert ; and the porpoises jumping up out of the water shewed their black tails in great abundance ; in short, every thing seemed to presage a most tremendous storm. I was seized with an indescribable kind of terror, and fled to my cabin as if some one was pursuing me for my life. In a little time the storm broke over us in all its terrors ; the thunder, no longer at a distance, sent forth such tremendous claps, as almost to stun one ; and the waves rolled mountains high. The vessel was carried up and down, here and there, hither and-thither, first whirled this way, then that

way, with such rapidity and velocity, as frightened me out of my very senses; and there I lay half dead with fear, until a sudden cry of *All lost!* aroused me from my stupor: a horrible crash that succeeded seemed to favour the supposition; but on my crawling on deck, I found it was only the mast had given way.

At length the storm ceased, and the weather became calm again: we repaired our damages as well as we could, and pursued our voyage, as I thought, very well for some weeks; when one morning the captain came to me, and said, he was very sorry to say he had not the least knowledge where we were; that he had enquired of the pilot and seamen, and they knew no better; and that he suspected the men, enraged at this, were about to mutiny, as the boatswain, carpenter, gunner, and in short all the inferior officers, were gotten together in the wardroom, the door of which they had locked fast, and were there holding a grand consultation, to put their villainous design into execution! This put me in a most terrible fright, as my terrified imagination presented that we should be murdered without mercy; and I sat, as it were, in a stupor: but the captain, reminding me that no time was to be lost, and saying that he knew the pilot and a few of the men were still faithful, we went on deck, armed ourselves well, and went down to the door of the wardroom, broke it open, knocked down some of the malecontents, secured others, and the rest, finding all hopes from re-

sistance in vain, surrendered ; and as there were no more hands on board than what were absolutely necessary, I, after punishing the ringleaders, and making the men promise not to be guilty of the like for the future, let them go ; and they did very well afterwards.

But an adventure was now about to befall me, which was for a while to put a stop to my travels. We had now been out for above three months, the vessel was leaky, the provisions short, and nearly all our fresh water spent, when land suddenly appeared in sight, and we anchored in a little bay, where myself and some of the men went on shore, with tools and arms, to get timber for the repairing of the ship, and procure provisions. All this was begun and completed in a fortnight, when I suddenly took it into my head to make a journey round the island : moreover, a particular friend of mine, who was a great naturalist, had commissioned me to bring him some stones and plants, which he had described were inestimable for their virtues ; and I thought it not unlikely but I might find some of them there. Accordingly I went, accompanied by five of the sailors, and walked on till noon, when the sun being grievously hot, we sat us down by the side of a rivulet, and ate our repast, which consisted of cold beef, biscuit, cheese, and onions. When we had nearly finished, my curiosity was attracted by some herbs which grew near the place, some of which I gathered, and finding them pretty well

tasted, I ate a large quantity of them; and as the sun still continued too hot for us to pursue our journey, retired under the shade of some trees which were a little way off, and laid myself down on the grass, leaving the men to do what they pleased. On a sudden I found myself overcome with an indescribable drowsiness, so that I could scarcely keep my eyes open; and on attempting to get up and rouse myself, I fell down motionless, and sunk into a profound sleep, which lasted the whole of the remainder of that day, all that night, all the next day, and a part of the third. When I awoke, I called out, but no one answered; upon which I went out of the grove, and found, to my great surprise, that all the men were gone: but supposing that they, thinking from my sleeping so long I was dead, had gone back to the boat, I took the road thither. Imagine my terror and consternation, when I arrived at the beach, to find that neither boat nor ship were to be seen, or any vestige of them! I ran about like a distracted man, and miserably deplored my folly in eating green herbs of which I had not the least knowledge, and which, for aught I knew, might kill me. At first I thought that the men might have run away with the ship; but then I recollected there were still enough on board to quell an insurrection, if such a thing had been; so I discarded that opinion. After some time, I fortunately recollected, that before we set out on the journey, I had left a chest with various articles of different



sorts in a small wood, where we had cut our timber, and it might possibly still be there ; accordingly thither I went, having nothing in the world about me but a knife, a ball of twine, and a few silver coins, which last I might as well have been without in that place. I had not gone far, when I saw, what had before escaped my notice in passing by, one of my men laying dead, not killed with shot, but to all appearance with a lance or some such weapon ; but as my business was not to stand looking at him, I passed by, and pursued my walk. At length I came to the place, and to my great joy the chest was still there ; upon which I opened it, and found it to contain a musket, a brace of pistols, and a sword ; twenty pounds of powder, with ball in proportion ; two excellent hatchets, a couple of hammers, two saws, three chisels, a large quantity of nails, and divers other tools ; and just as I thought I had searched the whole, I perceived a large piece of paper, that entirely covered the bottom, and on lifting it up, found underneath a very good suit of clothes, and several other articles of apparel, that I afterwards found not only comfortable and convenient, but absolutely necessary.

Having viewed all these with as much pleasure as if my very life depended on them, I at length replaced them in the box, and began to consider what I should do, which job took me up the whole day ; but at length, as I had plenty of tools, I determined on building me a hut in which I might live. The

next morning, therefore, I searched for a convenient place ; and had not gone far, when a habitation presented itself which I thought would be more secure, and save me the trouble of making a house, of which I had a great dread ; and this was a cave in the side of a hill : thither then I conveyed my things, which took me up a day and more ; and when this was done, set about enlarging my apartment ; and, after much labour, succeeded in hollowing it out into a tolerable square. I likewise made an inner room, or cave, to sleep in, the entrance of which, for greater security, was close to the ceiling of the outer one, and only just large enough to admit me, and what I wished to carry in ; so that I ascended and descended by a ladder of twine. By means of ropes I got my chest over into this place ; and now every thing began to have an air of comfort, and I upon the whole did very well. To prevent the too fast decrease of my powder and shot, which were to me very precious articles, I had made me a bow and arrows, and these supplied me plentifully with food, nay sometimes in more abundance than I could eat.

Thus had I lived for a month, when one night I was suddenly awoke out of my sleep by voices very near me ; upon which starting up, what was my terror at beholding thirty or forty savages in my outer apartment, to all appearance in a most terrible rage, as they were stamping with their feet, and making furious gestures ! and this I afterwards

found was occasioned by the profanation of the cave, which was sacred to their great god Kam Kam, as they easily saw the work I had been making. At length they began their sacrifice, which was the purpose they came for, an annual feast being always held there; and this, with a variety of odd ceremonies, too tedious to relate, took them up till morning; when they began searching and looking in every corner and cranny of the cave, in hopes, I suppose, of finding out who had so abominably injured it. As for me, I, as you may suppose, remained pent up in the corner of my inner apartment half dead with fear, and expecting every moment to see them enter and murder me: fortunately the entrance being small, close to the top, and in an obscure corner, where the light did not come, escaped their notice, and they departed, I was in hopes, not to come back again; but, lo and behold! just as I was about to put out my twine ladder, and descend into the outer apartment, they all returned, bringing with them an immense quantity of those herbs which had been the cause of my disaster. They sat down, and began eating them with great rapacity; so I was obliged to lay still once more; and the herbs soon began to operate on them in the same manner as on me, viz. throwing them into a profound sleep, which, they having eat much more plentifully than I did, lasted three whole days and nights, so that I was almost starved, not having courage to venture out, and get something to eat. I did not

know when they might awake, and if they found me, it would be certain death.

But to return to my story. They at length arose, and departed for good ; upon which, creeping out of my concealment, trembling and ready to famish, I, after satisfying my hunger a little, began to consider what I should do, as to remain in the cave any longer would be quite unsafe, and folly in the extreme. After much debate within myself, I determined on my first plan of building a house, which should be strong enough to resist, if necessary, the attacks of the savages and wild beasts, if there were any of the latter. Accordingly out I set to look for a situation ; and here, to form an adequate idea of the place I fixed upon, it will be necessary to give a short description of the island.

It was in length from north to south, at the farthest extremity, ten miles, and in width from east to west about seven. At the distance of two miles from the northern side, where I was, there was a lake about a mile and three quarters long, and one and a half wide, and in the middle of this lake there was a small island, a quarter of a mile in length, and the same distance in breadth, to all appearance covered entirely with trees, so thick and so intricate, as to be almost impenetrable. Here it was that I resolved to fix my abode, hoping to find shelter and security behind the thick branches. Accordingly having stowed all my furniture of tools and arms, and every thing else, into my great chest, I with much labour

dragged it down to the side of the lake, and there set it afloat; and setting myself on it, as in a boat, I, with the assistance of two long poles cut for the purpose, contrived to paddle along to the island, where, having landed, I threw myself down, overcome with fatigue. When I awoke, having hauled my chest on shore, I went to work to make a road into the midst of the trees; but when I had felled about a dozen, I was much surprised and rejoiced to find that they only grew in a thick crust just round the edge, and that the inside was one pleasant field, with a pool of good water in the middle, and here and there little clumps of lemon and lime trees. I therefore split seven of the trees I had felled into very strong posts, and, having loosened the earth, stuck them all up fast, close to the side of the pond, at equal distances. I then felled some more trees, and split those with the others into smaller poles, less substantial than the first; and with these filled the spaces between the others entirely. Then I interwove small twigs and branches between: and, lastly, covered the whole with a kind of plaister, which I made of clay and water mixed, and which when dried in the sun, something resembled mortar.

Thus was my outer wall composed; but it would be of small use without a roof of some sort or another, and I was in great perplexity how to make one. However, at length having laid planks of an inch and a half thick all over the top as a ceiling, I managed, by laying poles across and across, with

their ends resting against each other in a peak, to form one ; and thatching it with dried twigs, thought it would do well enough : but just as it was finished, I found that I had left out one of the most essential parts, a chimney ; so that I was obliged to take great part down again ; but was gainer by it in the end, being enabled to convert the space between the first ceiling and the roof into a storehouse, wherein I used to keep my smoked provisions, grain, and various articles.

Thus was every thing belonging to the outside of the house finished. I conveyed my things into it, and began to live a little regularly. I had among other things made me a boat, with several pots and pans to stew my meat in, and used twice every week to go across the lake in the former. You must observe, not in the latter ; I did not go in the pans. I had built a gate in the place where the trees had been felled, which was as well formed for security as possible ; but my house still wanted many things to make it completely comfortable : for instance, my great chest served, with two great coats, one to cover me, and the other to lie on, for a bed ; the same thing served for a table ; and my only seat was the stump of a large tree, which with great labour I had cut down, and got it into my habitation ; it being so heavy, that I could scarcely lift it ; so it always remained stationary. In short, I had nothing ; so I resolved to set about making me some furniture.

And first of all, with much pains, made a table,

which though very clumsy and unshapely, I thought would do well enough for my purpose: however, when I tried to lift it, it was so monstrously heavy, that I could scarcely pull it along; so I was dreadfully perplexed, and had half a mind to take it to pieces; but at length I bethought myself of a way to remedy it, by making it run on wheels, after the manner of brass ones in this country; and it did very well so. The next thing to be made was seats; and without much difficulty I got four three-legged stools, and likewise two large benches, the same length as my table, completed. When I set about making chairs, I could not for the world fasten on backs: twenty chairs did I pull to pieces before I succeeded; but I at last thought of a method, by making all the back part in one, and then joining it on to the front, which answered; so I made half a dozen, and two with arms to them, as I was wont to have a comfortable easy chair, in which, when fatigued with my day's work, I might set me down and take a nap. But now the most tedious part of my work was to come; and this was a bed: innumerable times did I attempt it before I succeeded in any thing; and when I succeeded in making one, it was pulled to pieces fifteen times before it could be brought to my satisfaction. At length, however, it was.

And now indeed I did begin to live in comfort: my house was furnished with a dozen seats, besides my two benches, which were each capable of containing six or eight persons at least; there was a

table, bed, and out of the odd pieces of wood I had contrived shelves and closets ; so that there was in short every thing that could be wished for. I had beside this a flock of tame deer, which I came by in the following manner : one day having shot a female with young ones, the latter followed me home, and became so familiar, that, perceiving how well it answered, I took several more in the same manner, till the number was increased to twenty ; these, with some fowls that I had taken from the nest, clipped their wings, and bred up tame, occupied one half of my little territory or domain, making a large live stock ; and the other half was sown with grain of various sorts ; so that the whole of my island was converted into some kind of use ; and I seldom or ever had occasion to go out of it, always keeping of smoked deer, two or three, in case of a sudden siege from the inhabitants, of whom I had a great dread ; and indeed not without some reason ; for in their sacrifice, to which I had been witness, instead of killing beasts, they killed men ; and if they would kill their own countrymen, surely they would not scruple to kill me.

But one day, when I had rambled farther than usual, I was suddenly surprised by a terrible bel-  
lowing of horns ; and on looking round, perceived two great armies of savages, one on each side of me, who by their manners appeared advancing to attack each other. I was just in the midst, and they had already appeared so near, that it was almost impos-



sible for me to escape ; and if I stood still, I must receive the shock of both parties without being protected by either : this was a most perplexing dilemma to be in, but there were not five minutes for consideration ; the arrows were beginning to fly from both sides, and several had already narrowly missed me, when I suddenly descried some of the men which had been in the cave in the party that was on the left, and this circumstance determined me to take part with the others, as they would then most likely do me no hurt ; and as for the others, I could easily see by their gestures that they were in a great rage with me, and took me to be the person who had abominably profaned the cave of their gods. Accordingly I discharged my pistols among them ; when in an instant such a dismal howling, and screaming, and yelling was commenced on both sides, that verily I never heard the like either before or since : in fine, the whole of both armies threw themselves flat on the ground, not daring to look up, or stir one inch ; and I, taking advantage of this universal terror, got off as fast as my legs could carry me, and concealed myself in a thick wood, where I resolved to wait till they were all gone.

In a little time, the savages, having recovered their fright, and finding every thing was quiet, got up, and begun fighting, when a most terrible and bloody battle ensued : javelins and arrows flew thick as hail, and myself, who sat as a spectator,

watched every little turn of fortune with almost as much interest and anxiety as if I had been king of one of the nations, or my life had been nearly concerned. At length the party which I had sided with began to prevail, and the other, whose cave I had so horribly injured, and who stood next the wood, began to fly; three of the men came running close one behind the other towards the very spot where I stood. Mercy upon me! thought I to myself, I shall certainly be murdered if I let these people pass; they will go and tell their countrymen, and come down by hundreds, and kill, nay, perhaps, what is worse, they will make me prisoner, and then offer me up as a sacrifice to their abominable gods, or starve me. But what shall I do! satan surely directed their steps hither! I will make them my servants. In this last determination I remained, and to put it in practice, hid myself behind some thickets. In a little time the first savage came up, and rushed close past, so that I knocked him down without stirring from my place, pulled him into me, bound his hands and feet, and made him understand by signs, that if he attempted to speak I would kill him. By the time all this was done, the second savage was come up; whom I treated in the same manner; as likewise the third; so that they were now all three with me, staring and wondering what was to become of them; and as I now perceived that both the victorious and the vanquished armies were quite out of sight, I conveyed my prisoners, one

by one, to my boat, which was on the lake, and having got them all three there, rowed over to my island, where I untied them, and set them at liberty; taught them how to sow grain, rear tame deer, and how wrong they were in worshipping false gods and idols, with many other things, which were entirely lost on one of them; but were far from being so on the others, as they proved very faithful servants to me; and it was from them I learned the particulars of the cave, and that it belonged to their god Kam Kam, as was before mentioned. They likewise told me they had surprised some white men like myself, and pursued them to the sea shore, killed one, but that when they got to the sea side, the white men went in a canoe to a great mountain of wood, with tall trees on it, such as they never had seen before, and that the mountain swam away into the middle of the sea with them; and their king, supposing it was these that had despoiled their cave, had offered a great reward for taking any of them; so that what had before been such a mystery to me, was now explained. These men could be no others but my own; and what the natives in their simplicity supposed to be a wooden mountain, with trees on it, was the ship, which, when the sailors arrived at, weighed anchor, without waiting for me. And thus was I left in the island.

Some time after this the anniversary of my misfortunes arrived, and I reflected how different I

then was from what I had been the year before ; I had now a house, grounds, above a score of tame deer, and near two dozen fowls, and three servants ; while on the preceding year I had nothing but the few articles contained in the chest, which I have already mentioned, and therefore it will be needless to repeat ; but, alas ! it was not to last long ; for that very week I went out shooting over the lake, and when I came back, lo and behold ! all three of my men were gone ; at which I was verily terrified almost out of my wits, and found I had, through my over caution, fallen into the very dilemma which I had been solicitous to avoid. Fool that I was, thought I to myself, why did not I content myself with getting behind the bushes to be concealed, and then let the men pass by unmolested ; they would not have seen me, or given any information of my being there : but now they know every particular of where I live, and every thing else, will go and tell their countrymen, who will come down and attack me by hundreds, and I shall certainly be killed. In such reflections as these did I pass the time, as you may suppose, not very pleasantly, till night ; when, to my great joy, two of them came back, and informed me, that as they were at work, they suddenly missed their companion, who it seems had swam across the lake, and escaped up the country, and that ever since they had been looking for him : they likewise added, that we might expect an attack in a few days, as he was certainly gone back

to their own countrymen, whom he would inform of every particular which had happened to him, and guided by him they would lose no time in coming; and they said this in such a doleful tone, as shewed they were really in earnest alarmed for our safety, and quite frightened me.

We therefore, as soon as ever it was daylight next morning, set about making preparations for defence, removed our corn, which was standing in sheaves, into my storehouse, and drove my deer and fowl into the house. When all this was done, we went on as usual for some little time; but one morning, as I was very busily employed, I was suddenly alarmed by a monstrous noise; and on looking up, found it to proceed from an army of the natives, who were advancing at full speed. I therefore immediately called to my men, who were at some distance, we ran into the house, and put ourselves in a posture of defence. In a short time they came to the side of the lake, jumped in, and swam over, broke down the gate which I had set up in the path between the trees for the security of the island, rushed in, and let fly a volley of arrows as thick as hail, which, however, did us not the least injury, and was immediately returned by me from all my fire arms, and two or three dozen of squibs, rockets, and crackers, the explosion of which so frightened them, that they took to their heels, and ran as fast as they could to the farther end of the island, where they remained some time; but at

length again ventured to come on ; and having fixed their bows, let fly a shower of arrows, by which one of my men was killed : but myself and the remaining one quickly revenged his death ; for snatching up the fire arms, we let fly among them with great success, as myself killed two and wounded three ; but my man, who took his aim more exact, killed three and wounded four ; for they were all huddled together, it was hardly possible to miss some of them. Perceiving the good success we had, we instantly re-loaded our pieces, and poured down another volley, which killed five and wounded eight. But the savages were enraged to desperation ; and even after we had given them a third, they still continued attempting in vain our destruction ; we therefore let off a vast number of destructive fireworks, which ran hissing and cracking along in such a manner, that the savages, frightened out of their wits, once more took to their heels, and did not, as before, come back again, but never stopped a moment till they came to the side of the lake ; when, jumping in, they swam over, and were soon out of sight.

We then ventured out to bury the dead men, which job took us up three whole days ; for there were a great number, as you will see by the following account : killed at the first volley, before we lost our man, 7 ; at the second, 5 ; at the third the same number as at the second ; and at the fourth, 6 ; total 23.

After this we had no more interruption from them ; and about four months after, my poor man was seized with a violent disorder, which carried him off, and I was once more left alone in my house to do all my work myself ; in which manner I lived for some time longer, without any thing remarkable happening. I had now been on that island for a year and a half, without having the least hope or prospect of getting away ; and indeed I lived so comfortable, that had it not been for the fear of the savages, such a thought would scarcely ever have entered my head ; when one morning, going down to the sea shore, what was my surprise at seeing footsteps on the sand, which plainly must have belonged to some person in shoes. I had not been there for a long time, and therefore knew they could not be my own ; and on following their track, they led me to a boat, which I easily knew must belong to some civilized people, and not the savages. I therefore resolved to wait there until they should come back ; and accordingly did so ; when about night, five sailors of our own country made their appearance, much surprised, as you may suppose, to find a man waiting for them, when they supposed the island uninhabited. They asked me many questions ; such as who I was, whence I came, and the like, all of which I answered in such a manner, as perfectly astonished them : in short, I related my adventures at large, and they agreed to take me on board their vessel, which they said had been driven

there by contrary winds, and was at anchor a little way off; so having gone back to my habitation, let my deer and fowl loose, and conveyed every thing of any value out of it, I went on board, and we soon after set sail. After some time we arrived at a port in one of the East India islands, where having disembarked, I wrote letters to inform my father that I was still alive, and begged him to send me some money; but as it would be some months at any rate before I should have an answer, I began to think of some means to procure a subsistence in that time; and fortunately heard of a baronet, who wanted a person to inspect the conduct and demeanour of four nieces and two grand-daughters in his absence, he being always out the whole day on business of great importance. I resolved to repair thither, as in this station I should live more comfortable, and not have near so much to do as in most others, and at the same time not lower myself more, or indeed so much; accordingly, out I set; but the castle being above twelve miles out of the town, did not get there that day; so having slept at a cottage by the way side, I next morning pursued my route, and about half-past eight arrived at the gate; where I knocked and knocked for a long time, before any body came: at length, however, it was opened by a smart footman, who, on hearing my business, was overwhelmingly polite, and immediately went to inform his master. I waited in the great hall for above a quarter of an hour, and was in truth quite



out of patience, before he came back : at length, however, to my great joy, he re-appeared, and conducted me through various winding passages and rich suits of apartments to the room of the worthy baronet, who was at breakfast ; and who, after asking me various questions, of who I was, and the like ; all of which I answered in such a manner, that he was not in the end much the wiser, began a long speech too tedious to relate, but which concluded in his agreeing to take me. He likewise cautioned me particularly not to let his nieces go into the companies of knights and noblemen ; which injunction I promised to observe with great exactness, and was then conducted to my apartment, where, being very tired, I went to sleep, and did not awake till dinner time, when I was conducted through the whole castle, and introduced to the ladies, of whom I was to have the charge, and of which the following is a short description. The eldest niece, who had already attained her twenty-sixth year, and who I thought it a most abominable crime should be at that age under, as it were, the guidance and instruction of a preceptor, was altogether of a most disagreeable aspect, and had something so haughty and forbidding in her manner, that I could at first hardly bring myself to speak to her. The second, who was five and twenty, was of a dark complexion, and upon the whole tolerably good looking ; but when she smiled, there was in her countenance such a look of design and malignity, as spoiled the whole.

The third, who was by far the most agreeable, both in look and manner, of all four, was tall and thin, very solemn and reserved ; and indeed to so great a length did she carry it, that one could scarcely get a word out of her. Very different was the fourth ; short, fat, a round face, her tongue was continually on the run ; she had naturally a good-natured temper, but unfortunately it was entirely spoiled by her extreme irritability ; the least opposition whatsoever put her in such violent wraths, as were quite horrible. Such were the four nieces : but the two grand-daughters were quite different : the eldest, who was but just eighteen, was extremely fair, had beautiful black eyes and hair, and teeth as white as ivory, which she had continual opportunities of displaying by her extreme addiction to laughing, as the least thing set her on ; in short, I was smitten with her charms, from the first moment I beheld her. Her sister, who was three years younger than herself, was much such another as herself, only not near so handsome, and much more grave.

The very first day of my arrival, I had like to have got in a terrible scrape ; for observing a certain kind of awkwardness in the manner of the younger niece, I took the liberty of mentioning it to her, whereupon she flew into a most violent passion, and, had I not speedily retreated, would I verily believe have boxed me on the ears. However, luckily this affair was speedily adjusted, and I was more cautious for

the future how I ventured to expostulate with her on her behaviour. Thus did I live for about three months; during which time I somehow or other found means to insinuate myself wonderfully into the good graces of the lady Matilda, for that was the name of the eldest grand-daughter, and this made me put up with many vexations, which I otherwise should not; for the four nieces, I know not for what reason, had taken a most violent dislike to me, and lost not a single opportunity of vexing me.

However, at the end of this time, the baronet, who was a great lover of antiquity and ancient fashions, to the great surprise of every body, proclaimed, what had not been seen for years past, a tournament. Knights and nobles, from all parts, were invited; and suits of armour, laid by for ages, again scrubbed up, and taken into use. At this tournament the ladies were to be present, unattended by me; and taking advantage of this, I resolved to go there as a knight; and, having declared my passion to the lady Matilda, perform such feats of valour, that the baronet should give his consent to our marriage. With this determination away I went, and purchased a splendid suit of armour, a steed, and every thing requisite; with which having arrayed myself, I on the day appointed repaired to the tournament, which was to be held on a large plain before the castle. But I had not gone far, when I recollected that I was still without one of

the most requisite things, a square, and so was obliged to go back and procure it : but this business being done, I returned as fast as possible, and found the knights assembled.

In a short time the ladies and damsels, who were to be spectators, began likewise to make their appearance, and seat themselves on a spacious scaffold, which was erected round three sides of a square of about three hundred yards for the purpose ; and as it was not yet time for the combats to begin, the various knights rode forth to address their respective mistresses. As for me, not being acquainted with the rules and forms observed at such feasts, I remained for some time standing still ; and a young nobleman, who was my rival, taking advantage of this, began a very pompous speech to the lady Matilda, but who, not upon the whole liking him very much, did not pay the least attention to it, and he at last retired, confused and disappointed : upon which myself, who had hitherto been quite inactive, rode up, and addressed her with a long speech, which I had previously composed for the occasion ; to which she condescended to give an attentive ear, and even shewed me some marks of preference. But just as I had arrived in the middle, and was uttering the words, *model of celestial perfection*, the signal to prepare for the combats was given, and I was forced to break off, and return to the stand ; from which, in a short time, sallied forth a valorous knight, mounted on a

Thracian courser, but who was quickly unhorsed by another, clad in armour of burnished steel, whereon were wrought various things and figures in gold, and on his helmet he bore the figure of a dragon.

This same knight vanquished successively three others ; but at length was overcome himself by one of a tall thin figure, who wore a helmet incrustated with silver. He likewise was thrown from his horse by one of a most gigantic stature and Herculean strength ; and fifteen more knights were served in the same manner by him ; but at that time and moment my rival came forth, and, at the very first onset, sent him rolling in the dust. But even he was not allowed to enjoy his victory long ; for a little fat squabby knight, clad in shining brass, with a shield and helmet of the same, came prancing out, and challenged him with great assurance. He proved victorious, and looked around with an air of satisfaction, supposing he had won the day, and that no one would dare to oppose him, there being only myself and one young nobleman left. But in this he was mistaken ; for, spurring up my steed, I advanced to meet him, and a furious battle commenced. Many strokes were given and received. I aimed a most terrible blow at his breastplate, which was, however, parried, and the force by that means fell upon his horse's neck, who was so grievously wounded, that it fell down. He, however, quickly dismounted. We continued fighting on foot. At length, by a vigorous effort, I broke his

sword in twain; and he, in a most cowardly and un-knightly manner took to his heels, jumped over the paling that was round the inclosure, and was soon out of sight.

The other knight I likewise vanquished; and was then conducted by the Lady Matilda, amidst the applause and congratulations of the whole assembly, to the great hall, where a supper of delicious and invigorating viands was prepared: and after the repast, I took my mistress aside, and, lifting up my vizor, which I had hitherto kept down, discovered to her who I was, and at the same time disclosed my real rank. She was, as you may suppose, much surprised; and acknowledged her love for me; but expressed herself much afraid that the baronet would not give his consent. She however said she would consult the elder niece on what was best to be done; and having settled this, we passed the evening away very pleasantly.

At midnight I was conducted to a most splendid apartment, in which I should have slept very sound, had not the rats rattled most abominably behind the wainscot, and disturbed my repose. In the morning, as I was dressing myself, I suddenly received a summons from the baronet, and immediately guessed the cause, which was as follows: the Lady Matilda had, immediately on my retiring, informed the elder niece of every thing I had told her; who, before having a great dislike to me, which was moreover much augmented by my vanquishing her lover, the

fat little knight, determined to revenge herself by giving information to the baronet; who, enraged at what he deemed my presumption, sent for me. No sooner did I arrive in his presence, than he began reproaching me in the bitterest language; and having vented his wrath to its full extent, drew a purse from his pocket; and having said, "there was the payment for the time I had served him, and a small sum over," departed; while I, having taken it up, and examined the contents, went to my room, took my portmanteau, and went out of the castle. When I arrived at the town, I fortunately found a vessel just ready to sail for my native country; and, having taken a place in it, set sail, and arrived there without any thing remarkable occurring.

I carried my things to an inn, and was shewn into a small apartment, miserably furnished, where I was just on the point of laying myself down on a sofa which stood in a dark corner, when unfortunately I trampled on the tail of a large black cat, who started up, and flew in my face with great fury. A terrible battle ensued, and I was grievously scratched before I could succeed in driving her away from the apartment; which being added to my other fatigue, made me in a short time fall fast asleep.

I continued thus till early the next morning; when getting up, and looking round me, lo and behold! my box, and every thing but what happened to be in the clothes I had on, was gone! Some one had

come in while I was asleep, and stolen it. Enraged beyond measure at this, I straight way got up, and departed from the inn, purchased a few necessary articles, and a knapsack to carry them in; and set out on foot for my own town, which was about thirty leagues off: my whole fortune in gold, silver, and notes, amounting to about £30.

When I had got ten miles on my journey, I was suddenly attacked by two robbers, who rushed out of a thicket, and were upon me before I hardly knew they were near, and ordered me to follow them; which I did, and we soon arrived at a small hill, where one of the men laid down his arms, in order to open a trap-door, which was concealed beneath some bushes; which I taking advantage of, snatched up one of his pistols, fired at and shot him dead: whereupon the other drew his sword, and aimed a blow at me, which would certainly have proved fatal if it had fallen on me; but jumping nimbly aside, I got behind him, and, seizing the fellow by the collar, a most furious struggle ensued; in which he, being much the stronger of the two, would certainly have been victorious, if I had not, letting him go with one hand, given him such a monstrous blow on the head with the pistol I had shot the other with, that it quite stunned him; and I, having armed myself with a sword and a brace of pistols, to make myself more secure for the future, got away as fast as I could, and went the rest of my journey without any thing remarkable occurring, sleeping by night in



cottages by the way-side; and at length arrived in my native town, where my friend the naturalist informed me that my father had been dead for three months, and that an upstart had laid claim to the estates, and gotten possession of them. I therefore repaired to the magistrate, and set forth my just right, which being proved and adjusted to my satisfaction, I began to think what I should do to pass away the time; when my friend the naturalist called upon me one morning, to inform me that he was going to travel in various countries, to complete his stock of rare plants, animals, and stones, and that if I liked to go with him, he would be very glad of my company. As I thought I could do nothing better, I accepted the proposal; and having purchased a vessel, and hired a guard of 400 infantry and 120 horse to escort us, when there should be occasion, in our journeys by land, we first proceeded to Egypt; and after visiting Grand Cairo, Pompey's Pillar, the ruin of the Pyramids, and every thing else worth seeing, sailed along and came to a port on the coast of Arabia; where we disposed of our vessel; and having purchased a number of camels and horses, formed with some other merchants, who were waiting there, a very large caravan, and we set out, being in all about 600. And these were placed in the following manner: first of all marched our cavalry, with 100 of the foot; then came myself on a camel, and, in case of an attack, was appointed chief commander of the caravan; around me were

my companions and the merchants, mounted in the same manner, each having by his side a horse, on which, in case of any kind of alarm, we might mount and act with more facility and activeness; then came 100 more of the infantry, and behind these about 200 camels, laden with valuable merchandize, with several hundred more bearing provisions of all kinds and sorts: while the remaining 200 of the guard brought up the rear.

Thus did we march on till night, when our eyes were refreshed by the sight of a small green plot, with a clump of trees, and a small stream on it. Here our guides informed us we were to pass the night; which was indeed very acceptable news, we being all miserably tired. Accordingly we pitched our tents, and settled ourselves for the night, turning the camels to feed, and go whither they liked. In the middle of the night I awoke, and could not any way get to sleep again; so I went out of the tent softly, and resolved to walk about; when I was alarmed by the appearance of a light, which kept on going backwards and forwards among the trees in a most unaccountable manner. You must not suppose I thought it was a ghost, for that was not the case; I watched and watched, till at length it disappeared suddenly. It appeared again, and continued in sight for about a quarter of an hour, then it vanished; then again appeared once more, and I saw nothing of it afterwards.

In the morning I communicated this strange cir-

circumstance to my companions; and what was our surprise, on going to look for our camels, to find no less than twenty of them, and fifteen horses gone! and our guides affirmed they had been stolen by the Arabs, who could not be far off, and that therefore we must keep in readiness for an attack: so having loaded our fire-arms, we proceeded, and met with no interruption till about the middle of the day; when we suddenly heard the sound of a bugle, or rather horn, at a distance; whose sounds reverberating across the deserts, were immediately answered by three or four others from the opposite direction. No sooner did our guides hear this, when they exclaimed we should be all lost if we did not instantly prepare for defence; and at that instant a party of between 2 and 300 Arabians appeared on our right, with about the same number on the left, advancing at full gallop; while we were content to receive them with a volley of musketry. No sooner was it let off, than the horses of the Arabs, not being used to stand fire, began kicking, and plunging, and prancing in such a manner, that their riders could scarcely keep their seats; and as soon as ever they could manage their beasts, retreated at full gallop the same as they came, and were out of sight in a moment.

We then proceeded for five days, without seeing parties of above forty or fifty in number, who did not dare approach us; when early one morning, a body of I believe above 1000 appeared, coming towards us at full speed; who were not, as the other men,

armed simply with bows and arrows, but with swords and carbines, consequently much more formidable. Their horses likewise stood fire; so we could not repel them that way; and indeed we should certainly have been worsted, if I had not divided my horse into two parties; and sending them round to attack our adversaries on each flank, they immediately fell into confusion, and fled like the others. In these two engagements we killed about 180, and had the good fortune not to lose a single man ourselves, so that we succeeded upon the whole pretty well; and had now been ten days on our journey, when all on a sudden an immense cloud, or column of dust, came driving towards us with amazing rapidity and force from the east; and immediately our guides, in their usual manner, cried out we should be all lost, if we did not throw ourselves flat on our beasts, and put something over their eyes; which we had scarce time to do, when the whirlwind approached with a great noise, and blew up the sand in such a manner, that we were half suffocated. To increase our misfortune, the horses and camels, not liking it much better than we did, began to kick and prance; so that with being half suffocated, and obliged to keep our eyes shut quite close for fear of being blinded, which was still worse, we had enough to do to hold fast, and keep our seats. At length, however, the whirlwind passed over us, and we ventured to look up, when a miserable spectacle was presented to our view; the sand, which was be-

fore quite smooth, was now all in furrows, as if it had been just ploughed up; and was so soft, and loosened by the very great violence of the wind, that our camels could with difficulty get on. Thus it continued for five miles, when we again got into a tolerable road, and continued so for the rest of the journey.

We had now been out fifteen days, and nearly all our provision was out, so that we were obliged to kill the camels for sustenance; and even this little helping out we did not have long; for a contagious disease got amongst the animals, which carried them off so fast, that we were forced to leave all the merchandize on the desert; so that in a short time we had nothing left but three skins of water: and then such a scramble I believe never was; to get a taste of these, some scrambled over the heads of others, some were knocked down in the bustle, and it was three full hours before I could restore peace and order to the caravan.

About that same evening we espied a small wood, with a stream of water in front, into which we every one of us ran to refresh ourselves, and quench our thirst; while our guides, whose spirits were as easily raised by any turn of good fortune, as they were in proportion depressed by bad, joyfully declared that this was the forerunner of a pleasant village; that we had now got to the end of the desert, and should have no more to cross before we got to the great city of Bagdad,

which was the place we were travelling to. This excellent news put us quite in ecstasies of joy; and having rolled ourselves in the stream as much as we wished, we pursued our road as fast as ever we could, and before dark got to the village, or rather town, for it was that, and a pretty large one too. Here we rested five days, to recover from our hardships and fatigue; and then, having bought more camels, we went on towards our place of destination, Bagdad.

After a pleasant journey, we arrived there; and on entering, were informed we could go no farther for some time, as there was a rebellion in the country, and the rebel troops were in possession of all that part of the country on the other side of the city, and despoiled all such travellers as came among them. We likewise heard the emperor was only waiting for more soldiers to give them battle; as the insurgents amounted to 25,000 infantry, and 5000 horse; and the royal army had only 12,500 in all: and as we had no particular business there, I took it into my head that we should go and offer our services; which, the rest having no particular objection, we did on the first opportunity, and were received very courteously by the emperor, who ordered us to be conducted to apartments in the palace, where he presently came to visit us; and the next morning reviewed our men, when he declared, that, with the assistance of them, he thought himself strong enough to attack the rebels; and ordered us to be in readiness to go next morning. Which cour-

mand we obeyed, and set out in the following order: ourselves, which was a great honour, marched first; behind us came 5000 of the emperor's soldiers, armed with swords and pikes; then the emperor himself, surrounded by his imperial guard, who were clad in purple, embroidered with gold, with their sword hilts and the crosses of their pikes likewise of gold; behind followed 1000 archers, and 800 light armed infantry; and then 3000 infantry, the same as what came first, with the cavalry.

In this manner we marched on for two miles, when the rebel army appeared in sight; and, having by some means or other got information of our designs, were all drawn out to receive us, with their pikes presented. The emperor therefore, who thought to have taken them by surprise, and quite unprepared, was obliged to form his men as well as he could under great disadvantages of ground, and we were stationed on the right. In a short time the battle commenced with great fury; wherever we went, victory declared on our side; we carried every thing before us like a torrent, and whole ranks of men fled before us like so many flocks of sheep: in a short time we had taken so many prisoners, that I was obliged to divide my force; and leaving nearly all to take care of the captives, I with about twenty pursued the flying troops, and destroyed such as made any resistance, but spared those who laid down their arms.

This being done, I was returning all alone, my

men having strayed from me to a distance in the pursuit, when I all on a sudden heard cries of distress issuing from a little grove by the way-side; and on going towards the place, found them to proceed from the emperor, who had been in close combat with the rebel chief, and having his horse killed under him, was just on the point of being taken. Immediately I attacked the rebel chief, and obliged him to turn his attention from the emperor to myself: but before I proceed in my history, I will relate the cause. The emperor's troops, having charged the insurgents with great impetuosity, were attacked by a large party of horse, which the latter had concealed behind some thickets, on their flank, thrown into disorder, and completely defeated; all the imperial guard were slain but a very few, and those, attentive to their own safety, fled different ways. The emperor, in his flight, had fallen in with the rebel chief, and been reduced to the situation aforementioned; and had I not just then happened to pass, would have lost his liberty, and most likely his life soon.

A most furious combat was now commenced, and continued in full force for a long time, when, by a well-aimed blow, I felled him to the earth, and he surrendered; in the mean time, the emperor, having disengaged himself, came up, and having ordered me to stand by the prisoner until he should come back, went to search for some of his men; with whom he soon returned; and I, having put myself



at the head of my men, went to stop the progress of the rebels. This unexpected opposition checked them beyond what I at all expected ; and, finding their chief taken prisoner, they either fled ; or laid down their arms ; so that we returned triumphantly to the city, myself having the honour to ride all the way by the side of the emperor.

The next morning, I was surprised by a party of soldiers coming to conduct me to the emperor, who was sitting in the great hall of audience to receive me ; and informed me, that he intended, as a reward for my services, to promote me to the rank of one of his ministers ; and I had scarcely time to recover from my surprise, when I was installed in my office. My companions likewise would have been placed in some inferior department if they had chosen ; but as they preferred continuing their travels, and as my friend the naturalist said he was afraid the emperor's favour would not last long, they, after being handsomely rewarded, pursued their route, though not before my friend had informed me, that if ever I wished to find him, he should be at a certain town in Tartary, which he mentioned.

I continued living in Bagdad for three months, without any thing remarkable happening, and all the time increasing in favour, till at length I was raised to the rank of prime minister ; and conducted in a kind of car so monstrous high, that it made me giddy to look down all around the town ; so that by the time I had taken the circuit of the city, my head

was so giddy, that I could with difficulty answer the questions which were asked me by the emperor ; which he not attributing to its real cause, but to inattention and neglect, was highly offended ; and this the courtiers perceiving, did not fail to heighten as much as possible ; so that the next day I could easily perceive a coldness in his manner towards me, very different from his former behaviour. In a short time this increased to such a degree, that from being hardly able to do without me, he could scarcely bear my company, and kept me employed in things as far distant as possible.

This kind of treatment I was forced to put up with for a month, when an accident happened, which restored me to a small degree of favour. The palace of the sultana was one night set on fire by some rogues, who were in the habit of going about at night doing all manner of mischief ; and the guards, afraid of being punished for their negligence, ran every one a separate way as fast as his legs could carry him ; so that the flames had got to an alarming height before they were discovered : eunuchs and damsels mingled their cries promiscuously together, and fled in terror and confusion from the destructive element, which threatened to devour them. My palace was situated behind the sultana's, but the garden of the latter, and a building for the reception of lions, tygers, and other wild animals, was between. The cries of distress at length reached my ears, and, starting up, I ran to the window to see the

cause ; which, notwithstanding the building before mentioned, I could easily discover ; so having hastily dressed myself, I ran out, and arrived just in time to save the sultana and her two daughters.

This service she returned by interceding the emperor in my behalf ; so that at her request I was taken once more into favour. But unfortunately, the rebel chief, who had been confined all this time, escaped from prison ; and the courtiers did not fail to attribute this to my negligence, it being my place to appoint guards to the different prisons. In the mean time great numbers flocked to the standard of this chief, and he in a short time, having an army of 2,500 men under his command, advanced without delay towards the city. I was therefore sent with my own men, and 1000 belonging to the country, to oppose him ; and in a short time we met. An action commenced, which, after lasting two hours, terminated in our favour ; but the chief, who had provided every thing in case of necessity, fled with a small party of his adherents to a little fort, about four miles off, and there set us at defiance. I therefore made an assault on the place ; but we were driven back ; upon which I ordered two brass cannon, which we had brought all the way over the desert, and had fortunately then taken with us, to be brought up, and with these commenced a fire upon the walls, which being very slight, and fit only to withstand the attack of soldiers belonging to such countries as themselves,

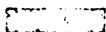
soon began to fall, and were before the next morning all in ruins ; so that we easily stormed the place, and took all the garrison, amounting to 250, prisoners.

The day before this happened, I received a letter from the emperor, saying, that every thing I found in the fort should be my own ; and this I took as a great mark of favour, though, as I afterwards found, it was because he expected there would be little or nothing ; but when I came to search, lo and behold ! there were eight large chests filled with the most valuable jewels of different sorts. This, which was considered a great offence, I did not inform the emperor of myself, but unfortunately, somehow or other, it reached his ears ; and he, being extremely avaricious, was now enraged beyond description. This I could easily perceive by his behaviour ; and expecting some turn of fortune, I hired a small vessel, shipped all my jewels and goods that was possible, without creating a suspicion, and sent it secretly to a small port thirty miles off, where I ordered the captain to wait until he heard my further directions ; but to be particularly careful not to let any body know to whom the ship belonged.

It turned out very lucky that I did this, for my overthrow was now about to be complete. The emperor gave a grand feast to all the noblemen, princes, and princesses within his realms, to which I, on account of my high rank, was unavoidably

invited. Unfortunately I fell in love with a very beautiful lady who was there, without knowing who or what she was ; all I knew was, that for some time past she had lived in great state at the palace of the sultana. The whole evening I was particularly officious, paying her all manner of attention, and observed that the emperor regarded me with a frowning aspect ; but attributing it to its old cause, I took no notice. It did not end here ; for a whole month afterwards I composed verses and sang sonnets in the gardens of the alkambrá, close under her windows, so that I thought she must of necessity hear me, in her praise : but one evening, as I was thus employed, being seated in an arbour of flowers, a voice like thunder, which I instantly recognized to be the emperor's, exclaimed, Vile minister ! to be thus singing of love songs, when thou oughtest to be attending to thy duty, and transacting the business of the empire ! Up I started, took to my heels, and ran without stopping to the farther end of the gardens ; where, not being able to stop till the gate was opened for me, I jumped over the paling, and went as fast as before to my house, where I passed the night in a most dreadful terror.

Early in the morning I received a summons to go to the palace of the emperor, which, as you may suppose, I obeyed tremblingly ; and as soon as I had got before him, he began, Miserable being ! presumptuous wretch !—Here rage for a short time



stopped his utterance ; but at length he proceeded :— who darest to sing sonnets, and fall in love with one of my mistresses ! Depart immediately from my empire, or before night thy head shall be stuck on the city gates ! Ready to sink with fear, I went from his presence ; and in going across the great hall, a man, who was steward of my household, slipped a note into my hand, saying, that if I would meet him at eight o'clock that evening at a place mentioned, he would secure me a safe escape Accordingly at night I went to the appointed place, where I found him waiting ; and he conducted me to a place erected for fuel ; where having put me into a great sack, and tied me up fast, he went away. I waited and waited, but he did not come again as he had promised ; and I began to be very impatient. Presently one of the cooks, belonging to a vast furnace which was in the emperor's palace, and where all the delicious dishes were drest, came for a supply of fuel ; and he, supposing the sack, in which I was, to be filled with wood, as the rest were, took me up on his shoulders, I suppose the dupe of my man's artifices. I began to kick and bounce about most furiously in my sack ; nor was I content with kicking and bouncing, I had recourse to thumping ; so that the poor cook, frightened out of his wits, took to his heels, and I got out. My man at that moment appeared, and conducted me to the outside of the city ; from whence I proceeded to the port where my vessel was, embarked, set sail, and, after a voyage of I

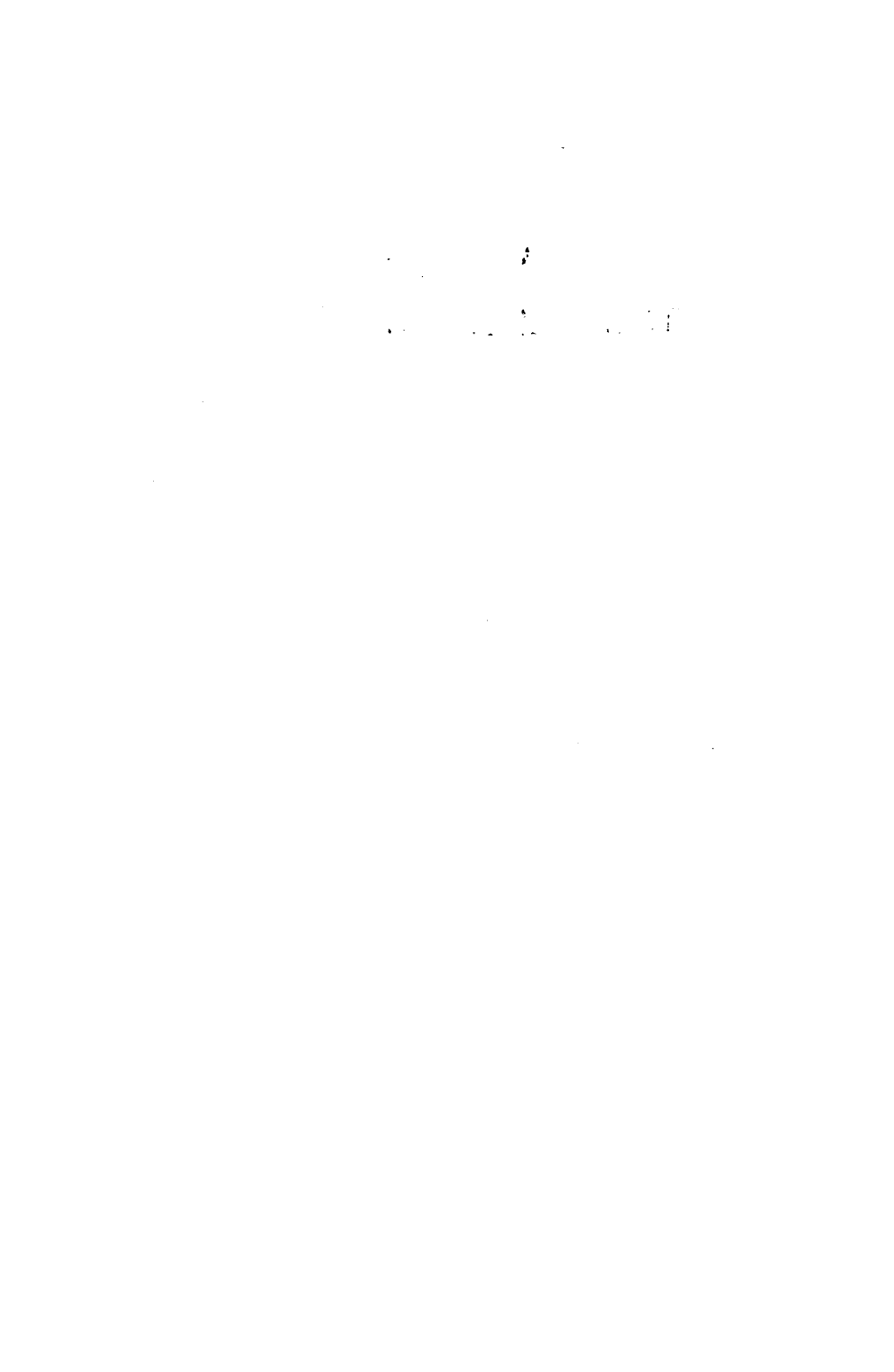
believe six weeks, arrived home, and settled in my present habitation.

Here the three friends arose, and retired to their own houses : but their visits continued ever afterwards.



**A**  
**ROMANCE.**





## CHAPTER I.

**I**N the middle of the reign of our great and valiant sovereign King Edward the First, there lived in the eastern part of Kent a certain knight, named Sir Francis Oglebury. This knight had in his younger days served under the King, then Prince of Wales, in the Holy Land, where he had signalized himself, by various acts of valour, against the infidels; and when the assassination of the young Prince was attempted, was one of the first to come to his assistance. On the return of the army from Palestine, in consequence of the death of King Henry the Third, to their native country, Prince Edward, being crowned, offered him a high dignity in the state; which Sir Francis, being naturally of a retired disposition, and averse to the gaieties of court, declined, wishing to live at his paternal inheritance in Kent, called Oglebury castle, after the name of the family who were its possessors. Here he passed the time in performing divers charitable actions, and relieving the peasantry who were distressed.

He lived thus for twenty years, when he set out on a journey to visit Sir Philip de Valence, an old friend of his, whose estate lay at the farther extremity of Westmoreland. From their earliest youth these two knights had had the strictest friend-

ship for each other ; and, in Sir Francis's absence to the Holy Land, had kept up a close correspondence, which on his return they continued, until within the last five years ; when Sir Francis missed receiving the letter which he was accustomed to have every quarter : but as this circumstance had happened before, owing to the irregularity of the conveyance in those days, he was not under any uneasiness. Quarter after quarter passed on, but no letters came ; and two years had now gone past without any tidings : still, however, he attributed it to their miscarriage, and endeavoured to keep away all dismal fears and apprehensions : but at times a gloomy foreboding would enter his imagination, notwithstanding his utmost efforts, and a presentiment of evil shoot across his mind.

Two more years passed on in this manner, and the greatest uneasiness and apprehension now took possession of him. He could in no way account for the long silence of his friend ; for the conveyance which brought his letters had, he now found, been regular all the time. In those he had himself written and sent he had desired to have answers immediately, in the most particular manner ; and his very retired way of living prevented him from knowing what was going on in the kingdom, which might have afforded him some clue to discover the cause. So he determined to take a journey to the castle of Sir Philip ; and would have done it then, had it not been for the united entreaties of his

household and the neighbouring peasantry, who at length succeeded in persuading him to wait one year longer.

As soon, however, as this was passed, he set out, as we have before related : himself was mounted on a grey steed, which had been in his possession for fourteen years ; by his side hung a sword, which had oft been stained with the blood of many a Saracen chieftain ; and behind him rode a single attendant, well armed and equipped, who had served him faithfully from his youth. They journeyed on at an easy pace in this manner for the whole of the first day, and at night slept at a small cottage, about sixteen miles beyond the great city of Canterbury, which place they passed through without stopping. The next day they pursued their journey, and proceeded without interruption to a certain place called Shooter's-hill, which as they were passing, four ruffians suddenly rushed out of a thicket, and attacked them. Sir Francis drew his sword, and prepared for an obstinate defence ; his man did the same, and a furious combat ensued. Two of the assailants were already laid breathless in the dust ; when one of those that remained blowing a horn, ten more instantly appeared, and hastened up to their assistance.

In a short time Sir Francis's man received a mortal wound on the head, and fell down lifeless, so that he was left alone to support the weight of the whole party. His horse was slain ; and placing himself

with his back against a tree, with difficulty kept off the enemies that surrounded him. On a sudden, just as he was ready to sink with fatigue, a person on horseback, who appeared by his manner to be of high rank, attended by six other horsemen, approached at full gallop, attacked the ruffians, killed four, and put the rest to flight. They then advanced towards Sir Francis, who was with difficulty supporting himself, by leaning on his sword and the side of the tree; and what was the surprise of that knight, on their nearer approach, to find the person who had so unexpectedly and providentially come to his assistance, was Sir Everard Tracey, a near relation of Sir Philip's.

After the first salutes and compliments were passed, Sir Everard enquired what had called Sir Francis on a journey from his own estate; to which the latter, having answered, asked after the health of his friend he was going to visit, when Sir Everard declared he was as ignorant of that as himself, and was just going on a journey for the same purpose as that he was on. They therefore determined to go together; and as it lay all in their road, proceeded to mount their horses, and go to the castle of Sir Everard. But just as they were about to depart, a feeble voice from the ground attracted their attention; and looking round, they perceived it to come from one of the robbers; who, having been sorely wounded in the conflict, was left on the ground, and unable to escape with his companions. On

going towards him, they found he was not of his own choice a robber, but that the others had carried him off while he was asleep, and forced him to serve them ever since. Satisfied with this, they took him up, and then hastened onwards as fast as possible, in order to arrive at Sir Everard's castle before night, where they proposed to stay a few days, and then proceed on their journey.

About dusk they arrived at the side of the moat with which it was surrounded ; when one of the attendants alighting, blew an immense horn, which was suspended by an iron chain to a large wooden post. In a short time the drawbridge was lowered by those within, and they crossed over it into the court of the castle ; where having dismounted, and left their horses to the care of the attendants, Sir Everard conducted his guest into the great hall, which was hung with helmets, coats of mail, shields, lances, and various trophies, in commemoration of the exploits of his ancestors. From thence they proceeded, through several splendid apartments, to a small one, decorated like all the rest with memorials and trophies, though in a different manner from the hall, as it was hung with pictures of the whole family instead of armour. Here the two knights sat down ; and after conversing a short time on various subjects, a repast was brought in, of all the delicious and invigorating viands in season ; snipes and venison smoked in plenty and profusion ; but Sir Francis, though particularly fond of both, ate

little, and spoke still less; which his host attributing to fatigue, had him as soon as possible conducted to his apartment, which was at the farther end of the castle, and had not been used for near half a century.

As soon as he had shut the door, he threw himself on a chair, and, casting his eyes around, surveyed the chamber in which he was: the tapestry of rich crimson velvet, with which it was hung, was, through the hand of time and long neglect, all in shreds, as well as the couch, which was of the same splendid articles; the golden fringes and embroidery, with which it was profusely adorned, were all falling to pieces; and the brightness with which they had formerly shone was reduced to a dusky yellow. The two tapestry pictures, which adorned each side of the apartment, and were fastened into the other part of the hangings, were with dust and time so defaced, that their subjects were scarcely distinguishable. So taking his light from the table, on which he had placed it, Sir Francis arose, and advanced to examine them: with considerable difficulty he discovered, that those on the north and southern side represented the exploits of King Arthur; those on the east two great battles between the Saxons and Danes; and those on the west two other great battles.

He had already looked over all the former, and was just examining the last of the two latter, when a strange rustling occasioned him to look round; and what was his astonishment and amaze, to be-

hold one of the pictures at the farther end slowly lifted up, a small door which it concealed thrown open, and a man in armour, with a lighted torch in his hand, whose features he fancied were perfectly familiar to him, emerge from behind ! An involuntary terror seized him ; the light which he held dropped from his hand, and he sunk on a chair that stood by in a kind of utter insensibility. In this state he continued for near a quarter of an hour, when recovering, and looking around, the figure was gone. He got up, took his light, and going towards the place from whence it had come, he endeavoured to lift up the tapestry, which was very easy, the top part only of the picture being joined into the rest. He then attempted to open the door, but in vain, for it was securely fastened on the inside : and finding his endeavours fruitless, he at length gave over, replaced the covering in its former position, and left it. At the end of the room were two other doors, which he now tried to open, but they were likewise locked fast ; and being much fatigued with these efforts, in addition to what he had undergone before, he extinguished his light, and, laying himself on the couch, went to sleep.

About the middle of the night he was awoke by strange and uncommon noises and voices as if were behind the place from which the figure had emerged : these, however, after continuing for about an hour, died away. Every thing was once more quiet, and Sir Francis again sunk into a profound



sleep; but his slumbers were disturbed by unpleasant visions. He thought he saw the figure of his friend standing before him in armour, and that it beckoned him to approach; but that as he drew nearer it retreated, and he suddenly found himself before an iron grating, through which he beheld his friend in close confinement, pining and in a miserable condition; and that he entreated him, in a most passionate manner, to set forth his injuries before the world, and revenge his wrongs: then he fancied himself transported to the midst of a barren heath, where the image of his friend was once more represented to his view, exactly as he was when they had last met; but that as he sprang forward to embrace him, the ground opened with a hideous gaping, and closed over him; and that as he was attempting to rescue him from the jaws of the frightful chasm, he was lifted up, and carried away by an invisible power with such rapidity, that he became senseless. The agitation occasioned by this dream at length awoke him; the sun had for an hour past been risen, and gilded the distant hills and landscape with its refulgent rays; the lark sent forth her melodious song in joy for the returning day; and Sir Francis, having hastily dressed himself, descended the staircase of the turret in which his apartment was, and entered the room in which he had supped on the preceding night, where Sir Everard was already waiting to receive him; and breakfast being brought in, they sat down to eat their repast.

During the meal, the conversation turning on what had happened to them in past times, Sir Francis proceeded to relate an adventure, that had like to have proved fatal to him, in the following words. When with the army in the Holy Land, the Prince of Wales, our present sovereign, entrusted me with a considerable post in the army, and honoured me with his confidence to a great degree; which distinction I endeavoured to deserve, by fulfilling my trust with great exactness: but in the mean time I was not free from the attacks of calumny and malice; a certain set of young men, envying my good fortune, used all the possible means in their power to lessen my favour with the Prince, and construe every little thing and mistake which I unintentionally committed into an intentional offence, an heinous crime. The Prince, however, who had too much sense not to easily perceive their malicious designs and intentions, listened to none of their insinuations; and, in order to mortify them, gave me the command of a party, to go and attack one of the enemy's convoys, which was expected to pass through a road about seven miles from the camp. This party consisted of these young men, who were six in number, twelve others, and myself; and early one morning we set out: but they had previously formed a most abominable scheme in their heads; and this was, that they should drop off one by one in a forest, through which we were to pass. This they did secretly, that myself and the others

found ourselves alone before we had entertained any idea of their being gone. However, not regarding this, we went on without them, and arrived at the end of the wood just in time, as the convoy was at that moment passing. We rushed out, and attacked them with great vigour; the guard which attended it was soon put to flight; and taking possession of the treasure, we took the road home: but passing through the wood, a party of saracens, who had observed us going, suddenly rushed out from behind some thickets, where they had lain in ambush, and, attacking us on all sides, a furious and bloody combat ensued. My men gave way; I rallied them; they again gave way, and I again rallied them; but, notwithstanding my utmost endeavours, we were obliged to leave the treasure we had taken in their hands, and get off as fast as we were able, thinking ourselves well off to escape with our lives; which indeed we had great difficulty in keeping, and were all sorely wounded. When we got back to the camp, my companions complained bitterly of the cowardly conduct of the others; who got nothing by it, as we afterwards found they were taken prisoners by the same party which attacked us.

No sooner had Sir Francis finished this account, than Sir Everard declared it put him in mind of an adventure which had happened to himself, of which he began an account, as follows. From the age of sixteen to twenty, I served with the army in the Holy Land, and on its return lived at court, where I

Had many opportunities of signalizing myself in the various tilts and tournaments which were held by our warlike sovereign, for the purpose of encouraging an emulation and spirit for arms among the numerous youths and warriors with which the palace was crowded. In one of these, given in celebration of the birth of the young prince, surnamed Caernarvon, it by chance happened that a damsel, named Lady Eleanora, was among the numberless beauties who came to be spectators ; whom I no sooner saw, than my heart was assailed with the darts of love, and I finally determined to appear as her knight. With this resolution, I waited with impatience till the day, on which the tournament was to begin, came. It at length arrived, and I entered the lists, fully determined to perform some memorable achievement. There were, besides myself, two other knights, who had the same mistress ; and we longed for the moment which was to determine who should be the victor, and gain the prize. At length the turn of the other two knights came, and they combated for some time with great vigour ; but at length one of them was unhorsed, and I came forward. At the first onset our lances broke in twain ; so drawing our swords, we engaged for some time with these weapons with great fury and spirit. Many blows were parried on both sides, which would alone have been sufficient to terminate the combat ; and at length, raising my sword above my head, I aimed such a terrible stroke, with all my might, at his hel-

met, that, taking effect, it brought him from his horse prostrate to the ground ; from which he arose, covered with dust, and retired in confusion. Rage, envy, and the desire of revenge, took possession of him, and he determined, whatever should be the consequence, to revenge himself in the way which he knew would mortify me most, that of making me lose the good opinion of my mistress. Unfortunately, he by means of a page, who attended on the Lady Eleanora, found out that I had sent a message, entreating an interview with her on the following night ; and bribing this page not to inform her of it, and send an answer to me, saying, my request would be complied with, he contrived by some means or other that she should be out at the time appointed ; and prevailed on one of her damsels to dress herself up exactly as her mistress was accustomed to do, and, seating herself in her apartment, personate her until a proper opportunity offered of discovering herself. Presently I softly rapped at the door, which she opened ; and having a veil over her face, I did not know but that it was my mistress ; and, throwing myself before her, began calling her *essence of divine beauty*, and *model of celestial perfection*, when the damsel, lifting up her veil, and bursting into a loud laugh, I discovered who she was. I started back ; but what was my vexation, when, lo and behold ! the Lady Eleanora at that moment opened the door, and appeared at the farther end of the apartment. Incensed at my supposed infidelity,

she immediately, notwithstanding I used my utmost endeavours to let her know how it really was, discarded me from her favour; and, vexed and disappointed, I resolved to retire from court to this castle; which I accordingly did; and have remained here ever since, until about four months ago, when I was called, on ungentle business, on a journey to the northern part of Wales; from which I was returning with a few attendants, and had just formed the plan of going to the castle of Sir Philip, when I met with you, and arrived so providentially, just in time to deliver you from the ruffians in the wood.

Sir Everard conducted his guest over the grounds around the castle, which, being very extensive, took them up some time, and indeed several hours. On their return, dinner being ready, they sat down to it: and Sir Francis was more cheerful, and enjoyed himself more than he had done for some months: but in the middle of the conversation they were startled by a great crash at the farther end of the castle; and immediately after, a great uproar arose in the hall; when, just as Sir Everard was getting up to enquire the cause, two of the servants ran in as pale as death, and declared they had seen a ghost! A ghost! you fools, exclaimed Sir Everard, who partook in no wise of the superstition of the time—and where? In the north tower, my lord, said one of the men, who was now beginning to recover a little from his terror. As Oliver and I were bringing wood across the court that is just beneath, it

appeared at one of the windows. And in what form ? said Sir Francis, who was much surprised at the seeming coincidence of the strange appearance he had seen the night before and this ghost. In the form of a man in armour, said the servant: the vizor was down, so we could not see its face. Was it armed ? said Sir Francis. I believe not, answered the man ; but I was so frightened, that I did not observe particularly : I only know, that as soon as it saw us, it jumped down from the window, and made that terrible crash. It is very extraordinary, said Sir Francis : for, by the description, he doubted not that it was the same figure he had himself seen : but suddenly checking himself, for fear of arousing any suspicion in the mind of Sir Everard that he knew any thing of it before, as he did not wish him to become acquainted with it just then, he broke off at these words.

When the servants were all gone, Sir Everard endeavoured to turn the thoughts of his guest to another subject, but in vain ; he was thoughtful and melancholy for the rest of the day, and early in the evening retired to his chamber ; where, placing his light on the table, and seating himself in one of the old decayed arm chairs, he began to ponder on the many strange and uncommon events which had happened in the short space since his arrival at the castle. In this state he continued, until the great bell of the castle tolling twelve, and resounding with a mournful echo through the towers and bat-

lements, aroused him from his reverie ; and taking his lamp from the table, he began to search for something with which he might turn his thoughts to another subject ; and, after looking a little while, discovered a small shelf, which, being in an obscure gloomy corner, had hitherto escaped his notice, and on which were some books on chivalry, with several other volumes : so taking one of the latter from its place, and having cleared it a little from the dust and mould, which formed a complete incrustment round the outside, he replaced the lamp on the table, and, drawing his chair up close, passed away the time by perusing the following tale.

In the days of King Alfred there lived a valiant young nobleman, named Sir Egbert, who followed his royal master through all his vicissitudes of fortune with great perseverance and fidelity : but Alfred, unwilling to expose his faithful friend any longer to danger, which a constant attendance on his person necessarily incurred, taking advantage of a profound sleep into which he had fallen, departed from him by a secret path, to where he well knew he would not think of searching for him. When Sir Egbert awoke, and found himself alone, he was in the greatest distress, and searched every place he could think of for his royal master, but in vain ; the object of his search was no where to be found ; and after spending three days in fruitless researches, he retired with five and twenty faithful followers to a strong castle, which was in his possession ;



where, shutting himself up, he subsisted by occasional incursions on small parts of the Danes, which were continually passing backwards and forwards.

After he had lived thus for some time, one day, as he was returning from one of these incursions with twelve of his men, and was just about to enter a large forest, through which their road lay, they were much surprised by the sound of voices ; and supposing themselves about to be attacked, prepared for a stout defence ; but finding, after some time, that they did not come as they expected, they proceeded : but scarcely had they gone fifty paces in the wood, when, through an opening in the thickets, they perceived a very beautiful lady, seated on a grassy bank, and by her side a knight, who by his violent manner and gestures seemed entreating her to accept his hand, which she appeared to refuse with ineffable contempt, and to be desiring him to leave, and torment her no more with his importunities. This, however, he would not comply with ; and continued them with as much vehemence as ever. Sir Egbert, astonished at this, resolved to wait and see the result of this scene ; and accordingly made signs to his men to keep silent. At length the damsel, tired and offended at the officious and importunate addresses and attentions of the knight, got up, and, approaching the place where Sir Egbert and his followers stood, would have walked away ; but this the knight no sooner perceived, than, starting up in a rage and fury, he

seized her by the arm, and pulled or rather dragged her to the place from which she had arose ; where he would have compelled her by force to yield to his desires, had not Sir Egbert, who could now no longer contain himself, sprang out, and, swearing by the holy virgin that he should not, while he had existence, violate a defenceless damsel, drew his sword, and prepared for a furious engagement. The knight, enraged almost to madness at the disappointment of his wishes, did the same ; and rushing on each other with the fury of two hungry lions, who, not having been able to find any prey, are determined to satiate themselves by tearing each other in pieces, a most terrible combat was commenced.

The action lasted for above an hour and a half with unabated fury, vigour, and spirit ; both received several wounds ; and at length, fatigued with fighting so long, and the loss of blood, Sir Egbert sunk on his knees. His servants, alarmed for his safety, would have rushed in to his assistance ; but, calling out aloud, he ordered them to keep back, declaring that he would with the weight of his single arm defend the damsel, or perish in the attempt ; and that when he was dead, if chance so directed, they might revenge themselves as they pleased. His antagonist, elated by this advantage, roused his sword in the air, and rushed on him, determined to crush him with the weight of that single effort, supposing that he should now gain an easy victory. But Sir Egbert, dextrously warding off the intended blow, re-

ceived his adversary, who came on with such force and violence as not to be able to stop himself, on the point of his sword, and running him through, he fell apparently lifeless at his feet : when Sir Egbert's attendants, coming from their station, from which they had beheld every thing that passed in silent attention, congratulated him of his victory.

In the mean time, the lady, having a little recovered from the fright into which the brutal behaviour of the knight had thrown her, terrified at the glare and glittering of the swords going backwards and forwards with great rapidity, with difficulty reached the bank on which she had before been seated, and supported herself by leaning on an ancient tree that grew by ; and on seeing the knight, who had interposed to deliver her, sink down, she had fallen into a swoon, and fainted away. Sir Egbert therefore immediately sent his attendants to take care of her ; nor would he accept the attendance they offered him, and of which he stood in great need, or mount his horse, until he was satisfied of her safety ; and then having placed her on horseback behind him, they took the road to the castle.

But they had not proceeded far, when their attention was attracted by the most dismal shrieks and bemoanings ; and going towards the place whence it proceeded, they discovered a young woman ; who no sooner perceived the lady, whom Sir Egbert had rescued from the knight, seated safely behind him,

than, running up, she entreated to be allowed to go with her; to which Sir Egbert readily consented; and being placed behind one of his followers, they once more proceeded on the road to the castle, where, without any more interruption, they at length arrived, and an apartment was immediately gotten ready for the lady and her attendant; where Sir Egbert on the following day paid her a visit, and requested her to inform him by what extraordinary circumstances she had been brought into the situation from which he had delivered her. I should consider myself ungrateful indeed, said she, and unworthy of your smallest regard or attention, if, after the great service you have done me, and infinite obligation I am under to you, I refused so trifling a favour.

I am the daughter of Count de Basan, a powerful nobleman, about fifteen leagues from this place, who, ever since the retirement and disappearance of our sovereign King Alfred, has remained with myself and his followers in his castle, where until very lately we kept a strict watch, for fear of being attacked by the Danes; but finding we were not in the least molested, we relaxed our vigilance, and woeful were the effects; for the Danes, who were ever on the watch for an opportunity to surprise us, taking advantage of this, came in the middle of the night, and, breaking open the gate of the fortress, rushed in before one of us were aware of it, or indeed had the least suspicion that an enemy was near.

My father and his followers, as soon as possible, started up, and, snatching up their arms, rushed out to oppose them ; but were, after making a short resistance, soon overpowered by the weight of superior numbers. During this time I was in my own apartment, which was the farther end of the great gallery at the western extremity of the castle, and situated in a large round turret ; and surprised at the unusual noise and bustle without, I got up, and, opening the door, went to the end of the passage to see the cause. You may easily imagine my terror and surprise, at beholding the hall beneath entirely filled with armed men, whose ferocious manner, savage aspect, and the noise that they made, bespoke not overmuch in their favour. I started back, and, running along the passage into my apartment, sunk on the first seat I met with in a kind of stupefaction, in which I remained for above half an hour ; and might have continued so much longer, if Agnes, my maid, the young woman whom I now have with me, had not pulled me by the arm, and aroused me from my stupor ; entreating me, if I had any regard for my safety, to try and effect my escape, as the soldiers were ascending the staircase which led up to us, had already gained the landing-place next to the one which opened into the passage, and would in a few moments more be in my apartment : and as I found, by the increasing noise and bustle, which now approached very fast, that what she said was true, and not merely the idle

suggestions of fear, I exerted myself with all my endeavours ; and having hastily collected a few valuable jewels which were in my apartment, we concealed ourselves behind the silken tapestry. Scarcely had we got behind it, when the soldiers, having previously made themselves drunk, and who by some means or other had gotten information that I lived in that room, came stamping and swearing along the passage ; and bursting open the door, entered the apartment. On finding me, as they supposed, gone, they redoubled their bel-lowsings and execrations, and began searching every crevice, corner, and cranny in the room, in hopes of finding me, and even lifted up the tapestry ; but fortunately it was at the other side ; and not seeing me just in the place, they let it down again, and departed. As soon as they were got quite out of hearing, which was indeed some time, such a noise did they make, we came from our concealment ; and going out of the door, cautiously descended a winding staircase, which led to the bottom of the tower, as I intended to go from thence into the hall of the castle, and then proceed by secret ways, which were known only to myself, my father, and his followers, to the entrance of an extensive subterraneous passage, through which we might escape without danger of being pursued, it going a considerable distance under ground. But when we arrived at the bottom of this staircase, we were alarmed by the sound of footsteps approaching ; and to prevent being disco-

vered, we were obliged to turn into a little room by the way side, where we waited until every thing was once more quiet.

But we now began to feel the calls and approaches of hunger ; and searching about, fortunately discovered the door of a small closet, which Agnes, who was not so fatigued as myself, advanced to open ; but no sooner had she turned the latch, than, uttering a loud shriek, she flew to the farther end of the room, leaving me to conjecture what had thrown her into such a violent fright ; the cause of which was simple enough ; a mouse, that had been busily employed there, disturbed by the opening the door, had sprang out between her fingers, and she, fancying that it was some horrible spirit, had put herself into this terror ; from which she after some time recovered, and again ventured to approach. There was luckily in the closet a considerable quantity of biscuits and dried fruits, with some bottles of wine ; and having refreshed ourselves with these, and taken as much of the remainder as we could conveniently carry, with two torches to light us through the passage, through which I proposed to pass, it being quite dark, we waited all the rest of the day, until it was beginning to grow dusk, as I thought that was the best time to set out ; and then going from the room, we proceeded into the great hall, and from thence to the entrance of the passage, without meeting with any interruption. But just as we were about to try to lift up the trap-

door, a man appeared approaching us ! I was very much frightened, supposing it to be one of the Danes ; but when he came nearer, I was much rejoiced to find that it was one of my father's own followers, who alone had escaped the hands of the assailants ; and who, perceiving me from behind a heap of stones, which had before hidden him from our view, had come out in order to beg me to let him accompany us ; which I readily complied with ; and we then endeavoured to lift up the stone door, which, not having been removed for many months, took us up some time. At length, however, we succeeded ; and having lighted our torches, we descended the steps, replaced the door, and slowly proceeded along the gloomy path, which was broken at short intervals by heaps of earth, and great pools of water ; and what with the dampness of the place, the great draught of wind, and the bats which had taken shelter in this gloomy solitude, who, disturbed by the light, came fluttering and playing their wings about our ears, we were several times in danger of being left in total darkness, which if it had so happened, we must have stayed there, and perished with hunger, as it would have been impossible for us to find our way out, we being scarcely able to go on with lights. At length, however, after encountering innumerable difficulties and dilemmas, we reached the end, and emerged into the open air, where it was completely dark, neither moon nor stars appearing in the sky ; and



the rain descended in torrents, so that we were drenched through and through ; and by the time we reached an old ruinous tower, two miles distant from the castle, were glad to get under the miserable shelter it afforded ; and after supping on a part of the refreshment we had so fortunately brought, there we passed the night. There my two companions, notwithstanding the uncomfortableness of our situation, contrived to have an uninterrupted repose ; but as for myself, I was too much taken up with disagreeable reflections for that to be possible. To increase my misfortunes, the wind and rain came through the roof in a most grievous manner, so as to be almost insupportable ; and I therefore hailed the first appearance of the rising sun, which, breaking forth in all its splendour, dispersed the mists that had collected during the night, with pleasure, and, awakening my companions, we pursued our route.

Days passed on without any thing remarkable happening, we still journeying as fast as possible from the castle ; when on the fourth day, as we were crossing the forest, in which you, my lord, met me, we were surprised by the sound of horses' feet, and in a few moments the knight, from whose hand you delivered me, with above a score of his retainers, made their appearance ; and no sooner perceived me, than they immediately galloped up. The meaning of this was, that the knight who commanded the party which had attacked the castle, en-

raged at my escaping, had come out with his followers in pursuit of me ; and as we, being on foot, proceeded very slow, they being on horseback, and going at full speed, performed what had taken us up three days in part of one, and overtook us as before related. My man would have defended me against them ; but he was soon overpowered, and slain ; and the knight's followers, taking Agnes, carried her, in spite of her endeavours, away to a distant part of the wood, where, as she has since told me, she wandered about until we came up, and took her with us. The knight then, notwithstanding the resistance I made, carried me by force to the grass bank, on which you found me, where he began making his profession to me ; which I refusing, he would have compelled me by force to comply with his abominable desires, had you not at that same moment rushed to my assistance, and delivered me from his persecutions.

Here the Lady Isabel, for so she was named, concluded her account : and Sir Egbert, who had all this time listened in silent attention and amazement, then enquired of her if it was her wish to continue at his castle, or to go to that of any of her relations ; as if she chose the former, she was extremely welcome to every thing that the castle afforded, as long as it was her pleasure to stay ; and if she preferred the latter, he would himself escort her with a party of his followers. To which she replied, that as the country was then in an extremely unsettled

state, she should for the present prefer the former. And Sir Egbert, who was so enchanted with her beauty, that he had fallen in love with her, being now no longer able to restrain his emotions, he hastily took leave, and retired to his own apartment, where he gave full vent to the violence of his passion.

A week passed on, during which time Sir Egbert regularly paid the Lady Isabel a visit every day; and at the end of this time, finding she did not behave to him in a manner that indicated any dislike, but on the contrary always conversed with an easy familiarity that spoke very far from it, he resolved to declare his affections in due form. But lest the lady should suppose that he intended, if she refused, to force her to a compliance, after the manner of the knight from whom he had delivered her, he previously addressed her with the following speech. You must not suppose, that when I declare the violence of my passion, I intend to force you into a compliance against your will. No, Lady Isabel, if fate decrees that you should refuse my hand, it will nevertheless not abate my respect; and I will endeavour to make up in a small degree in the quality of a friend, what I had hoped for in that of a husband. To this the Lady Isabel replied, with a modest air, that she could bestow her hand on no one with so much pleasure and readiness as himself, and that therefore she accepted his proposal.

Sir Egbert rejoiced at this, and immediately had

preparations made to celebrate the occasion. A friar from a neighbouring monastery was procured to perform the ceremony, and nought was heard for three whole days in the castle of Sir Egbert but the sound of festivity and rejoicings. But all at once this merriment was put a stop to, by the sudden appearance of a small Danish army, of about 800 men ; which, surrounding the castle, closely besieged it. The attendants of the knight, from whom Sir Egbert had delivered the Lady Isabel, and whom he had left as he supposed dead, alarmed at the stay and long absence of their master, went forth in search of him, and in a short time found him as he had been left ; but taking him up, and carrying him to the castle, he presently recovered his senses ; and enraged at the sudden interposition of Sir Egbert, which had thus completely disappointed him in his designs, he was no sooner quite well, than he determined to revenge himself ; and having procured the Lady Isabel's father, whom he had taken prisoner, to be secretly murdered, he hastily assembled his followers, and marched without delay with them to the castle of Sir Egbert, fully determined to raze it to the ground, and not to spare one mortal it contained : so that this army was the knight with the whole body of his retainers.—Here Sir Francis was startled by a slight rustling, and then immediately after he heard the same noises and voices he had on the night before. A kind of involuntary suspicion entered his mind, that his friend had been or would be

murdered; and as he found that it was near midnight, he retired to repose.

On the following day, Sir Everard led his guest through the various apartments of the castle; and, proud of displaying the ancient remains of the grandeur of his ancestors, enlarged much on the different trophies with which they were hung, and the elegance of the ornaments and decorations, some of which had been there for nearly three centuries. Images without heads, mutilated warriors, and scarfs, which had been won at a tournament by some valiant knight of the family, lay in different parts. When they arrived at the apartment beneath that in which Sir Francis had slept, Sir Everard passed on; and surprised at this circumstance, his guest asked him, with a seeming air of indifference, to what use they were appropriated. To which he answered, that his kinsman, Sir Humphrey de Valence, had taken them in use for some purpose, which he was not acquainted with; and that as Sir Humphrey was a very jealous man, he made it a rule never to go into them, for fear of giving offence, if it should come to his ears. Sir Francis then enquired, what apartments were beyond his own, the doors of which he had attempted in vain to open; and Sir Everard told him, that they having secret communication with those beneath, he laid himself under the same restrictions with regard to them; but the keys were concealed somewhere in his apartment, and that if he wished to examine

them he might. As Sir Francis made these questions, he looked his host full in the face, to try and see if there was any thing in his countenance by which he might trace the cause of the noises he had heard; but nothing appeared; and he was fully convinced, that if any person was confined there, of which he had a strong suspicion, it was without the knowledge of Sir Everard.

In the evening, when he retired to his chamber, he took the book from the shelf, and read the continuation of the tale he had begun on the preceding evening, which went on as follows. " They forded the moat with which the castle was surrounded; and having gained a footing on the other side, attempted to scale the walls, but were repulsed by Sir Egbert with his followers. Thrice they attempted, and thrice they were driven back, leaving every time above a score of men behind them: till at length, finding it impossible to succeed in that way, they turned their endeavours to another point, and endeavoured to force open the gate. During this time Lady Isabel was seated in her apartment, in a most distressing situation. She heard the shouts of the assailants, and their attempts on the gate, and fancied every moment that it seemed to come down with a hideous crash. She saw Sir Egbert and part of his followers descend from the battlements to the hall, in order to oppose the assailants, in case they should succeed in their attempts; and imagined that despair was pictured in their countenances; while Agnes,

instead of lessening, only increased her terrors, and stood trembling as pale as a spectre. At length she was relieved from her apprehensions by every thing becoming quiet: the Danes, finding all their endeavours fruitless, had retired, and encamped themselves around the walls of the fortress, fully determined to starve the inhabitants out. But in this design they were fortunately hindered; for a large detachment of the main Danish army having been completely defeated by a party of the British, who, sallying out of the fortress in which they were, cut the greater part to pieces, the knight was obliged to depart in haste with his followers to make up for the loss; and two days afterwards Sir Egbert received intelligence from his royal master, saying that he was not dead, as was supposed, but in retirement, and ordering him to repair, five days from that time, to Selwood, with all the force he could collect, that being the place of rendezvous he had appointed for the rest of his nobility, to whom he had sent the like intelligence.

Overjoyed at this unexpected news, Sir Egbert immediately prepared to obey the directions given; and having collected with his own followers a troop of forty horsemen, he went on the appointed day to the place mentioned, and was one of the first to greet his sovereign on his re-appearance. A considerable number being assembled, King Alfred proposed to go in disguise, and thus penetrate into the midst of the Danish camp, to see if it was safe to:

make an attack. Sir Egbert would fain have accompanied him; but when they arrived at the outskirts of the entrenchments, he desired him to go back, to prevent the suspicion which two persons being together might occasion; at the same time reminding him, that if the scheme was discovered, and himself killed, he might yet live to revenge his death, and raise the spirits of his fallen countrymen. Sir Egbert, who could not but acknowledge the justice of this reasoning, reluctantly consented; and having followed his master with his eyes until he was quite out of sight, he took the road back to the place where his followers were stationed. As he retraced the ground, a thousand unpleasant ideas crowded on his mind; and not reflecting that the Danish knight must of necessity be gone to join the army, he feared lest, taking advantage of his absence, he might surprise the castle in its defenceless state, and carry off his wife. With these tormenting reflections he passed the time, until he got to his men, and then the busy scene before him drove them out of his head.

On the following day King Alfred returned from his search; he had penetrated to the very midst of the camp, and been introduced to the presence of the Danish princes, before whom he had officiated as a harper; and finding the Danish army entirely without order or discipline, from the supposition that all opposition to them was at an end, he marched with his forces without delay to Eddington, where he gave



them battle ; and they being seized with a panic at the sudden appearance of an army, when they supposed every thing like a numerous body of troops was exterminated, were completely defeated. In the middle of the engagement Sir Egbert encountered the Danish knight, and, both being made furious by different motives, a furious combat was begun ; and at length Sir Egbert laid him prostrate and breathless on the ground. After this, King Alfred pursued the Danes to Rochester ; which place having besieged and taken, he there fixed his residence, and resolved to rest from the fatigues of war.

Sir Egbert, whom the bustle of a camp had hitherto kept from, and restrained from mentioning, more domestic subjects, now informed his sovereign of his recent marriage with the Lady Isabel, and entreated permission to visit her, and inform her of his safety ; which request was readily granted him : and his master moreover invited him to bring her with him to court ; which Sir Egbert accepted ; and setting out with twelve of his followers, arrived at the castle, and was received with the greatest demonstrations of joy. As soon as the necessary preparations could be made, they set out on their journey to court, where they lived for a year without any interruption : but at the end of that time the Lady Isabel began to feel a wish to know what was become of her father, of whom she had never received any tidings. Sir Egbert likewise had the same desire ; and having obtained leave, on pretence

Of visiting their own domain, to be absent from court for seven days, they set out with ten attendants.

On the evening of the second day they arrived at the gate of the count's castle, and knocked loudly, but no one came; and after waiting for the space of a quarter of an hour, they knocked again. At length, after a considerable time had elapsed, an old woman appeared at the spikehole of an adjoining tower, and demanded, in a shrill tone of voice, which was echoed through the adjoining battlements, what they wanted; to which they replied, Shelter for the night: and after much perambulation and conference, they were admitted, and conducted to an apartment, in which was a roasting fire, by the side of which were two men, and at the farther end stood a table, with the supper: and Sir Egbert could not help remarking to himself, that the two men regarded them with seeming distrust and suspicion, and frequently whispered to each other, though knowing they could not do any thing against so superior a number, they concealed it as much as they possibly could.

After this, supper was begun; and being ended, the old woman conducted them to their apartment; but as she went along, Sir Egbert observed her to tremble most violently to such a degree, that she could scarcely hold the candle; and on a sudden a slight cracking at a short distance frightened her in such a manner, that throwing down the light, she flew to the farther end of the passage; so that Sir

Egbert and his followers could scarce refrain from laughter; but fearing lest they should give offence, they restrained themselves until they were got into their room; where, seating themselves, they waited till every thing was quiet; and when Sir Egbert thought every one in the castle asleep; they got up, and sallied forth towards the room in which the men that belonged to the castle slept. But previously to this they had heard strange voices in the room that adjoined, for which they could in no wise account; and this served them as a pretext; so having first secured the two men, they awoke them, and said, that they had heard strange, uncommon, and unaccountable noises, and that therefore they had arisen to enquire the cause, which they must insist on knowing. To which one of the men replied, that it was a ghost; that the Danish knight had caused the nobleman, to whom the castle formerly belonged, to be murdered, and that ever since the apartments there had been haunted by his ghost, and in consequence of this were locked up; but that if they wished to see them, he could shew them through.

The lady Isabel, on hearing that her father had been murdered, had swooned away, and it was some time before she recovered; but when she did, she insisted on accompanying Sir Egbert in his search: they therefore took the way to these apartments. On unlocking the door of the outer one, they were much amazed to find in it the remains of a fire, when the man had affirmed that it had not been in

habited for above a year and a half: at the farther end was an open door, and going on they entered it; when their astonishment was still more increased, by beholding a knight in armour, apparently asleep, on a kind of low sofa, and whom the man no sooner perceived, than he uttered a loud exclamation, that that was the ghost of the murdered count. With the noise he made he awoke the knight; who, raising himself up, discovered that he was the count himself, and not his spirit, and who was equally surprised with themselves to behold his daughter.

After enquiring what had brought them thither, she entreated him in return to relate in what manner his life had been saved: and the attendants being withdrawn, he complied, and began as follows.

After being taken prisoner by the Danes, I was confined in one of the dungeons for a whole month, during which time I saw no living soul, save a man who used daily to bring me a loaf of bread and a pitcher of water; who, thrusting them through the iron grating by means of a long pole, departed again without uttering a single sentence. Oftentimes did I endeavour to draw from him a few syllables, but in vain; he preserved a most strict and rigorous silence. My dungeon was beneath this tower, and at both ends there was a square grating of iron, one of which admitted air and light, and the other looked into another cell, still more dark, dismal, and gloomy than my own, and to which fortunately no key could

be found; else I should have had my residence there: and one night, as I was lying fast asleep, I was suddenly awakened by being pulled about in a very rough manner; and looking up, you may easily imagine my surprise, to behold myself beneath the gripe of an ill-looking ruffian, who stood over me with his sword drawn, and seemed just on the point of murdering me. I attempted to resist, but, lo! my hands were bound fast. I attempted to cry out, but my mouth was gagged: in short, I was completely defenceless. The ruffian's sword was already upraised, and descending rapidly to give the fatal stroke, when on a sudden a light was thrust through the inner grating; and the fellow, supposing it was a ghost, or some supernatural spirit, immediately forsook me, and fled, while I remained standing, and hardly knowing what to make of it; till in a little time another man entered, who, having undone the cords with which my hands were tied, informed me, that himself and the other had been hired by the Danish knight, into whose hands I had fallen, to murder me; but that abhorring the deed, he had determined to prevent it; and knowing the other to be of a superstitious turn, he had taken the method before described. But what amazed me more than any thing was, that he contrived to gain admittance to the inner dungeon, as how he had I could not conceive; but he told me, he had got in through a breach in the wall, and that his master had required him to shew the proofs of his having killed me; but that he

would satisfy him by staining his sword in the blood of an ox. He likewise told me, that if I wished he could let me live in the apartments above, so as I followed implicitly his directions : and as I was glad enough to leave my miserable dungeon, he took me out of it then; and told me, all I had to do was to make strange noises, and shew lights in the different windows, which would raise a supposition that it was haunted ; that he would encourage the report, and supply me with every thing necessary to live comfortable ; which was a thing easy enough, he being chief steward : and ever since I have laid here, keeping up the noises and lights, and have met with no disturbance until to-night, when I was awakened by your entrance." Thus concluded the count's narrative ; and Sir Egbert and his lady lived many years in uninterrupted felicity and happiness.

Here the tale concluded ; and Sir Francis, having replaced the book on the shelf, put his chair in its place, and was about to extinguish his light, when he heard a noise behind the wainscot, which convinced him that some one was endeavouring to open the door through which the figure had appeared ; and he determined to watch whom it might be : for this purpose therefore he concealed himself behind part of the tapestry, which was particularly ragged and decayed, and through which he might see without being seen. But he was in a most perplexing dilemma how to conceal his light, as if the figure saw that, it would know there must be inhabitants.

either in or near the apartment, and would no doubt immediately disappear, as it had done the time before. However, after a moment's consideration, he placed it behind one of the window curtains, and then hastily retired to the situation he had chosen. He had but just time to effect his purpose, when the tapestry picture was lifted up, the door behind which it concealed opened, and the figure came out exactly as before. To the great disappointment of Sir Francis, its vizor was down; and as it slowly paced the room it uttered deep groans; then, suddenly raising its voice, it exclaimed, Ye powers of heaven, ye disposers of all things, how long will ye suffer tyranny and injustice to triumph, and innocence and virtue to be trampled under foot! As it spake, it uttered a hollow sigh, and the sounds appeared familiar to the ear of Sir Francis; and leaning forward to take a nearer view, he caused the tapestry to shake with some degree of violence. The figure started, and, casting an apprehensive glance around the apartment, hastily retired through the door, and, closing it, immediately disappeared.

Sir Francis, astonished and amazed, came from his concealment, and determined to take advantage of the permission Sir Everard had given him, to search the apartment beyond his own. But as the night was then far advanced, he postponed his search to the following one: when, after a diligent search, he found the keys in one corner, amidst a heap of rubbish, extremely mouldy, and covered

with rust. After extricating them from the rubbish with which they were surrounded, he applied one of them to the door to which it belonged, and endeavoured to open it; but the lock, being rusty and stiff from not having been opened for a length of time, resisted his attempts. Twice he was on the point of giving it up as a fruitless trial; and then, recovering his courage and strength, he tried again. The third time it yielded, and, cracking back with a horrible noise, came open, and discovered to his view a dark and dismal apartment, at the farther end of which stood a helmet, sword, and shield; and as Sir Francis lifted up the latter to examine it, he discovered beneath a roll of parchment, on which was the following inscription: *O! whomsoever chance directs to find this parchment, take compassion on the victims of oppression and injustice, and revenge their wrongs on the person of the monster, Humphrey de Valence.*

Sir Francis, having now his suppositions, that whatever evil was in the apartments below, if there was any, was occasioned by Sir Humphrey, changed into a certainty, he carefully folded up the parchment, resolving to keep it as a memorial, and then went along the side of the apartment, in the corner of which stood a lance; and as he lifted it from its place to examine it, he was startled by a noise at the other end; and looking around, fancied he saw one of the pictures, which was placed with its front to the wall, move. As he remained with



his eyes fixed, and motionless, a figure in white suddenly darted out from behind, and, gliding swiftly along, disappeared almost in a moment.

Sir Francis, though entirely free from the superstition with which those days were obscured, felt at this time a kind of insupportable terror ; and staggering out of the apartment into his own, he fell on a seat, and remained for some time nearly stupified. At length, however, recovering, he once more ventured in ; and going to the place where the form had vanished, he found an open door, which led into a little apartment about sixteen yards square ; and in this there was a large closet. Sir Francis searched minutely every thing in both, in hopes of finding the communication which Sir Everard had mentioned, as by means of that he thought it not unlikely but he might discover the cause of the appearances he had seen. But he could no where discover any vestige of it : and just as he was about to depart, his foot struck against something hard in the floor ; and on looking down, he perceived a piece of iron across one of the planks. It immediately struck him, that this might possibly have something to do with what he was in search of ; and pressing on it, the board slid back, and discovered to his view an aperture large enough to admit a single person, and to it was affixed a rope ladder, carefully rolled up. He therefore unfurled it ; and, taking his light in one hand, he descended with great caution, lest the wind should blow out his candle, and himself be

left in total darkness. At length he arrived at the bottom, and found himself in a spacious closet, exactly the same as above, the window of which was of painted glass, but nearly broken to pieces, and the wind in consequence whistled through, and came in such violent gusts, that Sir Francis was verily obliged almost to burn himself in holding his hand before the candle. The door of the closet unfortunately, to increase his misfortunes, was shut, and so fast, that it was impossible to open it with one hand only; so that after deliberating which was preferable of the two, to continue his search at the hazard of being left in darkness, or return without going any further, he determined on the former; and placing the light on the table, applied all his united efforts and strength to the door, and at last succeeded in pushing it open; and fortunately during the time he was so engaged, the gusts of wind somewhat abated their violence, so that his light was not, as he expected, put out; and taking it up, he went into the room, which was of exactly the same size and dimensions as the one that was above.

Here he stopped a few moments to rest himself, and recover from the fatigue of his exertions in opening the door; and he thought it was divested of the dreary and dismal look which the rooms above had, and that it appeared as if it had been very lately inhabited. He looked towards the door that opened inwards to another apartment, and was much amazed to see a light through the key-hole

He therefore got up, and, softly approaching it, thought he could plainly distinguish voices within; and not doubting but it was the person confined there, tried to open it, but found it was locked on the inside: and his attention was soon taken from that to a most direful calamity; the wind on a sudden came in a most violent manner, put out his light, and blew the door that opened to the closet shut; so that Sir Francis was in a very terrible situation, and knew not which way to turn for fear of falling over the tables and chairs. He at length, however, groped his way along the wall, and by feeling about found the door-way; and it having once been opened, it was not at all difficult to do so again. Sir Francis found his way to the ladder, ascended it, replaced the board in its proper situation, and, hastily crossing the apartments into his own, locked the door: and having relit his lamp, he examined the other; but there was in it nothing remarkable; and, fatigued with his search, he threw himself on the couch, and enjoyed an uninterrupted repose until morning.

After this, Sir Francis stayed at the castle of Sir Everard five days, and at the end of that time proposed that they should set out on their journey; to which his host readily assented: and accordingly, early one morning they set out, Sir Everard having with him one attendant, and Sir Francis taking, to replace his old servant, who was, as has already been represented, killed in the combat with the ruf-

fians, as he was recovered from his wounds, and appeared a very honest fellow, the man whom they had saved from destruction, by bringing along with them, and whom we shall hereafter call by the name of Michael.

After journeying four days, they arrived early in the evening, and just as the bell of a neighbouring convent tolled six, at a village which was contiguous to the castle of Sir Philip; and having left their horses and attendants at the cottage of a peasant, who hospitably invited them to take shelter for the night, they proceeded to the cell of a venerable abbot; who, having had the monastery of which he was superior broken open, and pillaged, by a band of desperate ruffians, the monks who composed his society murdered, and himself escaped with his life with difficulty, was reduced to the greatest poverty, and would have perished, had it not been for the benevolence of Sir Philip, who had procured him this cell, where he had lived ever since. When they arrived at the gate of the grass-plot that was before the door, Father Peter, for this was the name of the abbot, arose to welcome them; and when they were seated on a stone bench beneath an arbour of jessamine, the two knights enquired after the welfare of Sir Philip, and whether he was still alive. To which he replied, that about five years ago, King Edward summoned him to attend him in an expedition against the Scots, who were then making great inroads under their chieftains;

and that accordingly he went, attended by all his vassals who could carry arms : that a report had been spread of his having been killed in a skirmish with the Scotch forces ; and as not one of the numerous retinue he took out ever came back, it could not be contradicted, though not only myself, but many others, suspected he had not come to so fair an end, as two messengers afterwards arrived, saying, that the army was to return in a few days. Some ill-looking ruffians were observed lurking about the village, and continued there for a whole week ; at the end of which time they on a sudden disappeared ; and traces of blood having been seen in the forest, which you may recollect borders the estate, it was generally believed that he had been murdered.

Shortly after this, Sir Humphrey de Valence, the rightful heir of the domain, came down to take possession of the castle ; and brought with him a set of fellows nearly as ill-looking as those we had recently seen in the village. Immediately a perfect change in the state of the things took place ; all the old tenants who inhabited the cottages round the grounds received orders to quit them, and were replaced by creatures of Sir Humphrey. The castle gate, which had formerly been opened to all strangers and persons in distress, was now shut against any such persons, and every thing was one continual scene of riot, confusion, and debauchery. At the time of Sir Philip's departure, his lady was far advanced in pregnancy, and it was expected daily that she would

be delivered of an infant ; which had it been born, and lived, would have effectually put a stop to the claims of Sir Humphrey ; but on a sudden it was given out that she had been seized with a violent fever and delirium, occasioned by excessive grief, and was dead ; and a very splendid funeral was given, as if it had really been so. As if it had really been so ? said Sir Francis. And have you any reasons for believing it was not so ? Many very strong ones, answered Father Peter : for instance, it was well known throughout the village, that before the arrival of Sir Humphrey, she supported her loss with great fortitude and firmness ; and it appears rather extraordinary, that just at the time, even had it been far more violent, that it might be supposed to have lost the greater part of its first impression, it should come on with double force in such a manner as to deprive her of existence.

But to return to the account I was giving you. The pomp and shew displayed on the occasion was really ridiculous in a high degree. There went on each side of the hearse a long row of Sir Humphrey's followers, dressed up in habits that but ill accorded with their frightful aspects and savage look. In short, it seemed more as if it was devised for laughter, than for such a mournful purpose ; and the very peasants expressed their astonishment and wonder. In the mean time a rumour was whispered abroad, that the southern wing of the castle was haunted ; and some even ventured to affirm, that

they had seen Lady Valence's ghost all in white cross the aisle of the chapel, which is situated at that end. The countenance of Sir Humphrey was always clouded with perpetual gloom, and a dismal frown was settled on his brow. He heard with the greatest anger and wrath these reports, and swore in a passion, that if they did not immediately cease, he would inform the Prince of Wales of them, and speedily revenge himself on the author of them; a threat, which he had it in his power to execute, as he was so much in favour with the young Prince, that he could through him procure means and permission to do almost any thing that he chose. This menace, therefore, he thought would be sufficient to silence them at once: but though it hindered it from being so generally talked of, as it would otherwise have been, it could not entirely prevent its being rumoured about; and the general topic of conversation among the peasantry, when there was no danger of being overheard, was the strange appearances at the castle. At length, after remaining here five months, Sir Humphrey, to the great joy of every one in the neighbourhood, became tired of the castle, and letting it to the Baron Fitzclarence, departed to one of his other estates. A short time after, the Baron, with his wife and family, consisting of two sons and one daughter, came down, and have continued here ever since, endeavouring to make up by their charitable actions and benevolence for the loss of our former excellent Lord.

Here Father Peter finished his account, and the two knights expressed their grief in a very forcible manner on hearing of the death of Sir Philip and his Lady: and as it was growing dusk, they took leave of the abbot, and, departing from his cell, returned slowly to the cottage, where they had left their horses and attendants, where they passed the night. And the next morning began to deliberate what course they should pursue; and as they had now attained the chief object of the journey, that of knowing what was become of Sir Philip, they resolved, after paying a visit to the Baron, to return home. Accordingly, that same morning they set out for the castle, where they were courteously received by the Baron; who would not suffer them to depart, until they had promised to visit him at some future period; and from him they had a repetition of the same account Father Peter had given them, except that he omitted those parts which were disgraceful to Sir Humphrey, whom he feared to incense, if it should come to his ears. And at length, the two knights, having with difficulty disengaged themselves from his pressing entreaties to stay, departed, and set out on their journey homewards, without any misfortunes befalling them.

They arrived at the castle of Sir Everard once more, where, to their great surprise, they found Sir Humphrey de Valence, who had come quite unexpectedly, with some of his retainers, in their absence, and had continued there ever since. As Sir Francis



was crossing the great hall, he perceived two ill-looking men standing on one side of it ; and he could scarcely believe his ears, when, on enquiring of his host, he found they were the attendants of Sir Humphrey. He felt an irresistible horror and dislike at the man who could employ such murderous looking wretches, and associate himself with them, and endeavoured, as much as possibly lay in his power, to avoid and keep from his company ; and as Sir Humphrey had certain reasons for doing the same, and behaving in a like manner to Sir Francis, they but seldom met. Still, however, being both under the same roof, they could not avoid doing it sometimes ; and then Sir Humphrey kept a gloomy silence, unless obliged to speak, in order to answer the questions which were asked him.

Thus the time passed on, when one night, after Sir Francis was fast asleep, he suddenly was awakened by a violent noise proceeding from the room beneath ; the voices which, on the nights before when he had heard them, were only very faint at loudest, were now to be heard quite plain, and apparently in loud contention. Presently there arose a terrible clashing of arms, as of two furious combatants, and which after some time gradually died away : then, as he was listening with the greatest attention and amazement, they came once more in hearing, and approaching nearer and nearer, appeared to come close behind the door which was in the wainscot, and through which the figure had appeared.

The voices were now so plain and near, that he thought he could distinguish that of Sir Humphrey ; and recollecting that he had in the evening declared it his intention to go and arrange something in the rooms, this confirmed him in what he had at first only suspected. The other voice appeared by its tone to be uttering bitter reproaches ; and presently both these and the clashing of arms entirely ceased. A dead silence ensued, and something fell with a heavy crash as it were down a flight of stairs ; a deep and hollow groan succeeded, and immediately after two loud shrieks. Every thing was then for some time quite silent, when voices were again distinguishable : they however soon ceased, and nothing more but the sound of footsteps, apparently going away, was heard for that night.

On the following day, Sir Francis related what he had before seen ; at which Sir Everard was much amazed, and unthinkingly mentioned it to Sir Humphrey, who at that moment entered. It is very strange, very strange indeed, said the knight, that I cannot have an apartment, but what is suspected to be for the purpose of harbouring spirits : and casting at Sir Francis a scowling look, out he went in a violent wrath, leaving Sir Everard in great perplexity and astonishment : and that very same day Sir Humphrey came to his host, and begged that he would remove Sir Francis to another apartment ; insinuating at the same time, that if every slight noise in his apartments was construed into groans, shrieks,

voices, and clashing of arms, it might give rise to suspicions very injurious to him ; and that therefore he should take it as a very great favour, if he would comply with his request. Sir Everard, though very much against this, was yet forced to comply, having no particular reason to oppose to it ; and accordingly one was got ready, exactly on the opposite side of the court in which the former was situate.

When Sir Francis retired, happening by chance to look out of the casement, he was much amazed to see a glimmering light at the farther end, which from its situation he was certain must proceed from the apartments underneath that which he before occupied ; and which, after waving backwards and forwards for some short space of time, approached, and, coming nearer and nearer, went close under his windows ; when, by the glare it threw around, he distinguished two men, whom he immediately recognized to be Sir Humphrey's, and a young lady in white, whom he fancied was exactly like the figure he had seen glide swiftly along on the evening of his search in the apartments : one of the men carried the light, and the other conducted the lady ; and, watching them, he could perceive that they went towards the drawbridge, which one of the men lowered ; when the other taking the light, and having safely crossed it with the lady, the one on the inner side drew it up again to its proper situation, and went into the castle. Sir Francis watched the light, until it was hid from view amongst the trees

of the shrubbery which surrounded the castle, and then laying himself on the couch, fell asleep: and, disgusted at the rude and uncivil behaviour of Sir Humphrey, who, ever since the unfortunate mentioning of the appearances and noises by Sir Everard, had rendered himself more unpleasant and disagreeable than ever, he three days after ordered Michael to saddle their horses, and departed for his own home, notwithstanding the pressing importunities of Sir Everard, who entreated him to stay a few days longer at his castle.

After two days they arrived home; and Sir Francis was joyfully received by his household, with a whole tribe of the neighbouring peasantry, who were assembled to welcome him on his return.

## CHAPTER II.

**A**BOUT ten years after this, Sir Francis recollecting the promise he had made to the Baron Fitzclarence of paying him a visit at some future period, and as he was now beginning to grow old and infirm, resolved to set out and pay it at once, and then spend the remainder of his life in peace and quietness. Accordingly early one morning he set out, attended by Michael, who was now from his diligence and attention become a very great favourite. At the end of seven days they arrived at the village, through which they passed without stopping, and proceeded to the cell of Father Peter.

The abbot received Sir Francis with a hearty welcome ; and, after enquiring after his welfare, introduced to his notice an interesting youth, of apparently between fifteen and sixteen ; whom Sir Francis no sooner saw, than he fancied he was the exact image of his friend Sir Philip ; and a secret prepossession and influence drew him as it were towards him in so forcible a manner, that, taking Father Peter aside, he proposed to take him under his protection, and make him as one of his family ; to which the abbot readily consented, well knowing,

that with such a protector as Sir Francis he would be much more likely to procure a good reception at court, and in the world, than if he continued with himself. But first, said he, it will be both proper and necessary to inform you of the little I know concerning him, and deliver into your hands some valuable jewels and other articles, which are his property, and which may one day be necessary to set forth and shew his claim to that high station and rank in life, which I am convinced, by numerous combining circumstances, he was designed to fill.

As to the matter of his birth, I am with that wholly unacquainted; but the peasant, from off whose hands I took him, informed me, that one evening, as he was returning from his day's labour, he was surprised to see something lying under a bush, by the side of the river, which you may recollect runs close under the castle, along through the estate of Sir Philip; and that on approaching it, he found it to be a large basket, which he took up, and carried home to his wife; and that on opening the covering, with which it was quite covered over, they were greatly amazed to find it contained an infant, fast asleep; beside which was a note, begging whoever found the child to take care of it, as, if ever it was restored to the possession of which it was the rightful owner, it would have it in its power to reward them more than adequate for the trouble and expence of bringing it up: and that as he had at that time no family of his own, he readily

kept it ; but since that time, his wife having had several children, and he being in great distress, I about eight years ago took Edward, which is the name of the youth, to live with me ; and at that time the peasant, who had before kept him, delivered to me some jewels, which he said were in the same basket with him, and which were those I before spoke of. So saying, the abbot drew forth from a drawer a small casket, which was very richly engraven ; and delivering it into the hands of Sir Francis, with the note, and a very beautiful diamond necklace, they went out of the inner apartment : and Sir Francis, going towards Edward, informed him of his intentions concerning him, and that he must henceforth consider himself as one of his family ; at which he appeared much rejoiced, and, thanking him a thousand times, prepared to accompany his benefactor on his visit to the castle.

Sir Francis having conversed a little with the abbot, and every thing being ready, they took leave of him, and set out. Edward, though extremely rejoiced at the offer of Sir Francis, could not at first help feeling a regret at quitting the place ; this, however, insensibly wore off ; and by the time they got to the castle, was entirely gone. The Baron received Sir Francis with great pleasure ; and, taking advantage of a cheerful mood into which he had fallen, attacked him most vehemently about staying a few weeks at his castle. I declare, said he, the last time I saw you, you were no sooner here than you were gone again ; but I now insist, as you are

here, that you will stay at least a month ; if you refuse, I really believe I shall be tempted to lock you up in the dungeon for a twelvemonth, and perhaps more ; so that if you have any regard for yourself, you had better not excite my rage and wrath by refusing. In this manner he ran on for nearly half an hour, before Sir Francis was allowed to make any reply ; but at length, having finished his speech, by positively declaring that every door and window, nay, every spikehole and cranny, should be barred up, to prevent the escape of his visitor, whom he was determined to keep a perfect prisoner, Sir Francis, not wishing to disappoint him, consented.

In the mean time, Edward had formed a most intimate friendship and acquaintance with the baron's two sons, Richard and William. These two young men, having received all the instruction in learning and science that the unenlightened state of the times would admit, easily distinguished the excellent qualities and understanding of their companion, and consequently courted his friendship with great earnestness ; and himself, having the same wish to become acquainted with them, they made a great progress in forming a close acquaintance. But this was not all ; he had conceived a most violent passion for the Lady Ellena, the Baron's daughter, which daily gained ground ; and the lady herself was not a stranger to the same sort of sensations : she could not approach the young knight without a deep crimson overspreading her counte-



nance, and being in a state of great confusion and distress. In a short time his passion increased to such a violent degree, that he determined to inform Sir Francis ; and accordingly did so. Sir Francis entirely approved of his choice ; but advised him, as he was yet much too young to think of marriage, to conceal it, and wait for a few years longer, in which time he might have an opportunity of performing some valorous achievement, which might render him worthy of demanding her hand. And Sir Francis did this for another reason ; which was, that he hoped in that time to discover the real birth of Edward. This, however, he kept a secret, and forbore mentioning ; and as Edward readily assented to the justice of this proposal, it was entirely hushed up.

A few days after, the Baron's two sons declaring their intention to go to a tournament, which was to be held at a certain castle in Yorkshire, and inviting Edward to accompany them, he resolved to accept of their invitation, and go. Accordingly a suit of armour was procured at the village, and Michael being deputed to attend him in the quality of a squire, a kind of employment for which he had no great relish, they set out ; Sir Francis having previously informed him, that if he was not at the Baron's castle on their return, he should be gone back to his own estate ; to which, as Michael was acquainted with the road, it would be easy for them to follow. As the three knights travelled very fast, they, after

journeying five days, arrived at the castle ; but it yet wanted above a fortnight to the tournament ; and this time they passed away in examining whatever was worth seeing in the country round about. At length the time came, and they now had a most excellent opportunity of displaying their dexterity and adroitness to advantage. Edward vanquished three knights, and the baron's two sons overcame the one two, and the other three. Amongst the adversaries of the former was a knight of a most gigantic stature, and proportionable strength ; on his left arm he bore a ponderous and massive shield, and, mounted on a black charger, defied all the knights in the lists to combat : but his boasted valour was soon cast aside when Edward came forward, who thrust him from his saddle, and he was glad to retire, and escape with no more injury than a fall from his horse. There was likewise a Welch knight, who could repeat the history of his ancestors for near three centuries back ; but this availed him little in the combat, and he likewise was forced to retire. And, lastly, a certain nobleman, whose birth and high extraction, of which he boasted much, and prided himself, availed him so little, that he was overthrown at the very first onset.

The tournament being ended, which had continued for three days, the knights, after remaining for some short time at the castle, set out on a short tour ; after which they intended to return home. At night they became bewildered in a large forest,

which was so thick, they could scarcely penetrate through. The weather had for some time been extremely hot and sultry, and a violent shower of rain, accompanied by thunder and lightning, descended from the clouds. Night overtook them ; and, except when the flashes of lightning darted with great violence through the foliage, and threw a momentary glare around, every thing was wrapped in a most impervious darkness. Michael, dripping with the rain, and shivering and shaking through fear, cursed within himself the fate which had brought him to be squire to a travelling knight, and heartily wished he was seated by the side of a cheerful blazing fire, instead of traversing a forest, which seemed to have no end, at the risk of being devoured by the wolves. But wishing was in vain, and would not bring better luck ; so he was forced to be contented.

After some time had passed without the lightning, their only guide, to direct them, Edward discovered by a sudden flash that himself and his squire had got separated from the rest of the party, and were left quite alone : he therefore no longer cared which way he went, and spurring on his horse, he let it take what direction it chose ; when suddenly he heard Michael, whom he supposed was all this while following close behind, roaring forth for him to stop ; and immediately after heard him bawl out for help ; and, looking round, perceived by the light of the moon, which just then began to make its appearance, his squire struggling most violently to dis-

engage himself from the grasp of a furious wolf, which had seized him by the clothes, and held him fast.

As soon as possible, the knight went to the assistance of his man, who was in a most grievous plight; and who was no sooner set at liberty, than he began most vehemently to harangue and to declaim against the practice of knights travelling about of nights, going to seek adventures, and being at tournaments, when at best they got nothing by it but some trifling applause; and ran the risk of getting broken heads, being devoured, or some such terrible calamity; while their squires were exposed to the hazard of having rents in their garments, and a thousand other inconveniences. Edward heard this harangue for some time with tolerable patience; but at length being unable any longer to contain himself, he exclaimed, Peace, varlet, I say! Dost thou suppose that valiant, true, and adventurous knights mind the dangers and hazards which thou hast spoken of, or that faithful squires care for the numerous trifling inconveniences which are necessarily attendant on their profession? No. If thou supposest such a thing, thou hast fallen widely into error, and it will be expedient that thou shouldst have it rooted out of thee, as otherwise thou canst not thyself make persevering and faithful squire. This speech silenced Michael, who afterwards dared not to utter a single syllable.

After some time, they, to their joy, emerged from

the wood, and found themselves on a large heath ; which they traversed for some time, without any appearance of shelter presenting itself ; but at length, lifting up their eyes, they beheld at a considerable distance lights, which they approached ; and, on coming up close, found them to proceed from an old ruined castle, which looked like the residence of ruffians and banditti. Having fastened their horses to an old projecting stone in the court-yard, they proceeded across it into the great hall ; but when they got there, Michael positively refused to go any farther ; and hiding himself behind a pedestal which stood up in one corner, and which had formerly supported an ancient image there, he stood trembling like an aspen leaf, and hardly daring to breathe, lest he should disturb and arouse the ghosts and imps with which the place abounded, as he fancied. Edward therefore was obliged to proceed alone : and drawing his sword, he proceeded across several large apartments and two great halls, and ascended a staircase, without interruption ; but when he had got about half way through a long narrow passage, he perceived a light in one which went off to the right of that in which he was ; and, listening, distinctly heard men's voices approaching very fast, and apparently in considerable numbers : he was therefore obliged to think of providing for his safety ; and fortunately a little farther on there was an inlet in the wall, in one corner of which having placed himself, he waited until they should be gone past. Pre-

sently, above two score of ruffians, cursing and swearing, came past, and went by without discovering him; and as soon as they were got to a sufficient distance, he got out of his place of concealment, and followed them softly at a distance, till they entered a large room on one side, behind the door of which he stationed himself in such a manner, as to behold the proceedings of those within, without being himself in the least discovered.

In a short time the banditti, for such they were, brought forth from a closet two or three flagons of wine, and the same time produced various sorts of viands; when the whole party, without farther delay, fell to eating and drinking, and presently became drunk; and infuriated with intoxication, they began to quarrel, and take offence at each other, and the whole set of them were presently in a violent wrath. Their swords were already unsheathed, and a most terrible and furious combat was about to commence, when their chief suddenly entered, and ordering them to follow him, they departed, leaving Edward to pursue his search at leisure.

As soon as they were out of hearing, he went into the apartment they had just left, and refreshed himself with the remains of their banquet. When this was done, he took a lighted torch, which lay at the end of the room, and, proceeding along the passage, ascended a second staircase; but scarcely had he proceeded twenty paces, when the rotten floor gave way, and he was precipitated into a gloomy dark

apartment. It was sometime before he recovered from the violence of the fall ; but as soon as he did he got up, and looked round to see how he might get on. There were two doors, one at each end of the room, exactly opposite each other ; and going up to one of these, he endeavoured to open it. After some time he succeeded, and ascended a narrow winding staircase, which led round and round to the top of a tower.

When he arrived at the top, he began to consider what he should do ; there was a trap-door opened to the top, and one a little below on the flight of stairs ; and as he was examining the latter, he distinctly heard the voice of a female lamenting her fate on the other side ; upon which, raising his voice, he exclaimed, "O lady ! can a knight, who is wholly at your disposal, render you any assistance, or aid you in your escape from this dreary castle ? Who art thou, and from whence dost thou speak ?" "O knight ! replied the damsel, my deliverance I am afraid is impracticable ; the door of my apartment is fast locked, and the window is secured with iron bars." "But is there not a door, said Edward, which opens to the north side of the turret from whence I speak ?" "Alas ! no, replied the lady ; I can perceive no door, nor any appearance of one : all that side of the room, as well as the rest, is hung with patchwork tapestry." "Lift up the tapestry then, said Edward, and you will behold a door, for one there certainly is." The damsel did as she was desired, and

beheld, as he had said, a door: but they were now in the greatest perplexity and dilemma how to arrive at each other, and saw in its full and true light the difficulties they had to encounter, for the door was nailed up all round.

At length, however, Edward, whose courage and perseverance no obstacles could surmount, after a short deliberation, applied his whole strength to the door, and pushed against it with very great violence; the planks and boards of which it was composed, rotten and worm-eaten, gave way, and they found themselves together: when what was the surprise of Edward, to find that the lady was no other than the Lady Ellena, the Baron's daughter! But as they were not in a place to relate the circumstances which had brought her there, they descended the winding staircase; and having got into the apartment at the bottom, opened the door at the farther end, which served as an entrance to a long passage; this terminated in a flight of stairs; which having ascended, they found themselves at but a short distance from the room in which the robbers had made their banquet: and as the Lady Ellena was much in want of refreshment, they entered it, and seated themselves on a large sofa.

As soon, however, as they had taken sufficient refreshment, Edward having reminded the lady, how dangerous and unsafe it was to remain there, they departed: but scarcely had they gone twenty paces in the passage, when they were considerably alarmed



by the appearance of a light at the farther extremity, and were obliged to conceal themselves in one corner, till three of the ruffians, who carried it, were gone past. They then proceeded without interruption to the outer hall, where they searched for Michael; but, lo and behold! he had disappeared. They searched every hole and corner they could think of, but in vain; gone he was, they knew not where; but that he was gone was certain. At length, recollecting the hazard and danger they ran by continuing there so long, they were just about to mount their horses, when he suddenly appeared from behind a heap of stones and rubbish, which stood up in one corner, and, creeping out, came after them. Edward severely reproved him for changing his situation, as thereby much delay had been occasioned, and the time, which might have been spent in making their escape, was lost in fruitless researches after him. To which Michael said, Laud, sir, do you suppose folks can stand stock still, when ghosts and evil spirits are flitting about one? For my part, I think 'tis morally impossible, and cant do it; and so ye need not think to make me.

Thus he went on, haranguing on the moral impossibility, as he termed it, of standing still, when under the influence of fear from ghosts, spectres, hobgoblins, and evil beings, until they were got a considerable distance from the castle, when, to the great joy of both the knight and lady, he ceased.

And Edward, now supposing they were in a place of safety, entreated Ellena to inform him by what means she had become immured within that dreary castle. But just as she was about to satisfy his curiosity, they perceived a great number of lights in the castle, which, after passing with great rapidity along that side of the building, collected in the court, where, after increasing in number from all quarters for a short space, they issued forth in small parties of ten or twelve across the heath.

No sooner did the Lady Ellena see this, than she immediately knew her escape was discovered, and that if they were ever taken, the knight and his squire would inevitably be killed, and herself immured in still more close confinement than before. They therefore spurred on their horses as fast as possible. A party of the pursuers came directly after them, gained ground considerably, and were just on the point of overtaking them, when turning into another track, they by this means evaded them, left them far behind, and escaped from their pursuit.

But now the Lady Ellena, whom the dread of being again taken, added to other fears, had hitherto kept from fainting, fell into a swoon. Edward was therefore under the necessity of stopping; and having seated her on the grass, and ordered Michael to stay by her, proceeded in quest of some water; but scarcely had he gone twelve paces, when his squire came roaring after him, "Sir, sir, I hope you do not

intend to leave us here all alone by ourselves : verily I shall lose my senses if ye do, and ye must not be angered when ye comes back to find us both swooned. Did these ruffians catch hold of us, we shall be cooped up like turkeys, and have good reason to complain ; egad, that we shall, master." " Peace, thou gabbler, cried Edward ; how many times must I order thee to be silent, before thou hast learnt how to keep thy tongue within its proper bounds. Go back, I say, this moment, or verily I shall be tempted to dismiss thee from thy squireship." " Why sir, sir, dont snap one in halves, cried Michael, for merely asking of a simple question. I only asked whether ye meant to leave us here alone." So saying, the squire, in not a very excellent mood, squatted down by the side of the Lady Ellena, and the knight pursued his search. After some time, he to his great joy found some water, and having filled his helmet with it, he returned to the lady, who after some time recovered ; and mounting their steeds, they pursued their way over the heath, across which the lights were still dispersed in great numbers, and at length reached the border of the wood where he had been bewildered the evening before ; and as they were deliberating whether or no they should enter, they were attracted by the barking of a dog. They followed the sound, and presently discovered a glimmering light, which they approached, and found it to proceed from a cottage, at which they knocked ; the door was presently

opened by a peasant ; of whom they requested shelter ; and going into the room, were much surprised and rejoiced to find, seated by a cheerful fire, the Baron's two sons, who had taken shelter there before them ; and they were equally astonished to see their sister with Edward ; who, after relating what had happened to him since his separation from the other knights in the wood, entreated the lady, as they were now in a place of safety, to inform them by what means she had come to the castle : with which request she complied, and began as follows.

A few days after your departure for the tournament, as I was walking with my maid in the wood, which is at the extremity of the park and grounds around the castle, and grounds of my father, we heard a rustling among the trees and thickets behind us ; but supposing that it was occasioned by the deer, with which the place was full, we did not mind it, and proceeded. Scarcely, however, had we gone a dozen paces, when suddenly three ruffians rushed out from behind the trees, and, seizing hold of us, put something on our mouths to prevent our crying ; which was indeed a very necessary precaution, both my father and Sir Francis being at a short distance ; and this no doubt they were acquainted with. As soon as they had done this, another man came with horses ; and one of them seating me behind him, they put a bandage over my eyes, and set off at full gallop. They continued going on in this manner for near two hours ; and then, stopping at

a cottage by the way side, set my eyes and mouth at liberty. This was some comfort at first, as I hoped to have met with some one who would have delivered me from their hands ; but I soon found this was a feeble hope; for immediately after they struck into by-ways, and continued in them afterwards for the rest of the journey. At times they stopped at cottages and hovels; and when I tried to get any thing out of these, they said they knew nothing about it, and never got any thing by meddling with other people's affairs, so should not trouble themselves about mine.

After travelling in this manner for three days, we arrived at the castle, where I was conducted to the apartment in the tower from whence I have just been delivered. In the evening, one of the men brought me some refreshments, and informed me, that the person who was the cause of my being carried off was Sir Humphrey de Valence, and that he intended paying me a visit the following evening. You may easily imagine my rage and indignation on hearing this. I could scarcely contain myself, and eagerly longed for the moment when I might reproach him with his abominable and shameful conduct.

The time passed on, and the evening at length came. Every noise I heard I fancied was the sound of footsteps coming along the passage into which my apartment opened. The bell of the castle struck nine, ten, and eleven, but no one came; and I be-

gan to hope that Sir Humphrey had deferred his visit until some other evening, when I should be more prepared to meet him ; for, notwithstanding my impatience for the time to come, I yet felt a great dread of it. But just as I had given up all thoughts of his coming, I heard the door at the end of the passage slam with a violent noise. Footsteps now did in reality approach ; and presently the door of my apartment opened, and Sir Humphrey, leaning on the man who had brought me refreshments on the preceding evening, made his appearance ; and, staggering in, seated himself on a sofa. The man went away, and he began uttering a thousand insolent speeches, so that I could scarcely keep my seat for indignation ; particularly when, at the conclusion of one of his harangues, he familiarly exclaimed, " So now, my dear Ellena, I hope you wont make both yourself and me extremely miserable, by refusing my offer !" " Miserable ! exclaimed I ; do you suppose it will make me miserable to refuse your odious addresses ? No. And if you have that mighty regard for me you pretend, torment me no more with your importunities, so very abominable to yourself, and distressing to my virtue." " Curse on your virtue," cried Sir Humphrey, half mad with rage and fury : " I would fain have had you by fair means ; but since they wont do, I must have recourse to force." So saying, he got up, and, advancing towards me with an exclamation as hideous as the roaring of wolves and wild beasts, he would

have inclosed me within his embrace ; but an extreme aversion and dislike to his person, which was augmented by his abominable behaviour in carrying me off as ye have before heard, gave me more than usual courage and strength ; and with this, added to his state of intoxication, I, by making a vigorous effort, threw him from me on the seat which he had just left, and from which he was unable to move without assistance. Calling therefore to the man who had brought him in, and who waited outside of the door till he should be wanted, he swore he would immure me all my life within the walls of that castle, and departed, leaving me to reflect on my fate.

It was some days after this before I saw or heard any thing more of him ; and during this time, I prevailed on the man who had before brought me refreshments, and who it seems had the care of me, to let me walk in the long passage, into which my apartment opened, though, as he informed me, if his master had become acquainted with it, he would immediately murder him.

At the end of a week, Sir Humphrey paid me another visit, in hopes, by the impression his menaces had made, to make me change my mind with regard to him ; but finding me inexorable, he repeated his threats, and departed. I saw nothing of him after this, and used regularly to walk in the passage every evening ; when once, as I was returning to my apartment, I was astonished by the sound

of voices; and looking towards the place from whence they seemed to proceed, I saw a light under the door of one of the rooms, which I had never observed to be there before. I therefore went up; and listened, and found by the conversation of those within that some one was a captive like myself, and that they were planning an escape; and then how I wished that it were possible for me to gain admittance to them, and accompany them: but as it was of no use wishing for what could not be, I returned to my room more sorrowful and discontented than ever.

It was the custom of my keeper, every night after it had struck ten, to prevent any suspicions of the liberty he allowed me, to come and lock the door of my apartment; and on the following night after this ceremony was performed, and I had seated myself on a chair, lamenting my fate, and listening to the wind that howled round the turret, I on a sudden heard myself addressed by a voice behind the wainscot, and which was delivered in the wonderful, sudden, and unexpected manner which my deliverer has already related. This is the whole account I have to give you, from beginning to end. And I now, as I have related what has happened to me, entreat you to inform me what has happened to you since your departure.

The three knights complied with her request; and related what had happened since their separation in the wood from Edward; and said, that



after wandering a considerable time, they had at length reached the cottage, and taken shelter there. Scarcely had they finished their relation, when Michael opened the door, and came bouncing in, exclaiming, "There's volks at the door, that vants to know if ye have seen a lady pass by this way; who by their description I takes to be the one ye have delivered. There's I know not how many of them; and says, if we have seen her, and dont tell 'em which way she is gone, they will murder us all. Faith, we have got into a pretty hobble and scrape, a searching about in the holes and crannies of old ruinous castles. I thought as how we should find no good by it." So saying, out he went again, in order to hide himself, and escape being murdered; leaving the three knights and the lady in a very unpleasant dilemma; for that these were the ruffians come thus far, they had not the least doubt. There was not a single moment for deliberation; the men, already impatient, had begun thundering aloud for admittance; and, hastily concealing the Lady Elena behind the bed which stood in the room, they opened the door, and let in the men, who began making a most strict and rigorous search; but at length, being pretty well satisfied that what they were in search of was not there, they departed.

The lady came from her concealment, and, seating themselves round the fire, began to converse; when Michael, being delivered from the fear of being murdered, came out of the place where he hid him-

self, and began reproaching with great vehemence for his master's reproving him so severely for changing his situation, when he positively declared and affirmed, that any one else would have done the same, and that he had seen what might have terrified satan himself, with all his imps and evil spirits. So very vehemently did he harangue, that at length Edward, for the purpose of silencing him, desired him to relate what he had seen, promising at the same time to be satisfied with him afterwards. And the squire, glad of the opportunity, related, that about half an hour after his master had left him, there came above a dozen ruffians to the gate, bringing with them a lady and another man ; and that, without perceiving the horses of the knight and his squire, they alighted, carried the lady across the court, and dragged her attendant by the ears in such a woful manner, that Michael, not thinking he should relish it much if they discovered and treated him in the same manner, as soon as they were gone, changed his situation for a more secure one. By the time the squire had finished this account, it was nearly daylight ; and as, with sitting up all night, the whole of the party were much fatigued, they retired to rest.

The next day they began to consult on what they should do ; and as what Michael had said, concerning the lady he had seen carried across the court, had raised the curiosity and adventurous spirit of the three knights to a very great degree, it was

determined that they should go forth, and try and effect her deliverance. Accordingly, as soon as it was dusk, they set out; and on the road were entertained by a long discourse and harangue from Michael, who loudly declaimed against the vast folly and imprudence of going into castles full of ruffians, for the sake of delivering damsels. At length they arrived at the gate of the castle, and knocked. Presently a man came out, and asked them in a surly tone, what they wanted? To which they replied, that, chancing to be benighted on the heath, they had approached the castle, in hopes of finding shelter: and if it were not inconvenient to the inhabitants, they requested to take up their lodging there. With this answer the man appeared satisfied; and, telling them to follow him, conducted them across the hall, up the staircase, and down the passage, from which the ruffians had come when Edward concealed himself from their view in an inlet of the wall. He then, shewing them into a room on one side, left them, having first promised them to come again in a short time with refreshments.

The knights now began to consider how they should put their plan in execution, as on their way there they had seen light under the door of a room in the same passage as the one they were in, and distinctly heard voices, which though confused, were yet plain enough for them to know there were a considerable number. They had not the least

doubt that these were the banditti ; and if they went out of the room for the execution of their scheme, and they happened to pass by and saw it empty, when their comrade, as no doubt he would, had informed them the knights were there, it might put into their heads a suspicion of their intentions, and they would then be at once undone. They therefore, after a short deliberation, resolved not to run so great a risk, when there was so little chance of succeeding, but wait until a more favourable opportunity offered itself ; and scarcely had they fixed themselves in this resolution, when the man, who had conducted them there, came in with divers sorts of provisions, and continued with them until night ; when the knights, expressing their wish to be shewn to the apartment where they were to sleep, he conducted them to a room, which, to their great surprise, Edward recollected was the same from which he had delivered the Lady Ellena, and their squires were lodged in the passage adjoining.

As soon therefore as the man was out of hearing, they got up, opened the door which had before been of so much service, descended the winding staircase, crossed the apartment beneath, traversed the long passage, and ascended the staircase with which it was terminated. They then, as every thing appeared very quiet, descended towards the court, and with considerable difficulty made their way across the long grass and stones, with which it was covered in great profusion, Michael being their

guide as to the direction in which the lady had been carried. In this manner they proceeded for some time, and at length arrived at a round tower, or turret, which formed the western extremity of the building. In the side of this was a small iron door; and doubting not but this led to what they were in search of, they tried to open it; but it was secured with a ponderous and massive bolt of the same metal as the door itself, which all their efforts united failed of being able to remove. At length, wore out with fruitless endeavours, and astonished that such a heavy cumbersome thing, which six men could not pull out of its place, should be set there as a security, they were on the point of giving it up; but proceeding farther on, they discovered a nob projecting from the wall at the side, and pressing on it with all their force, the bolt immediately flew back, the door opened with ease, and they perceived a narrow flight of steps, which went down to a great depth, and were lost in darkness. This they descended; and, on arriving at the bottom, found themselves at the entrance of a long passage, which was lighted at intervals by a torch or two, and came out of the ground; and looked so dreary and dismal, that when they got about half way through, they stopped to deliberate whether or no they should proceed, and venture into the gloom before them. But considering that they were six in number, and that their intentions were honourable, they resolved to go on; and a faint ray of light, which at that mo-

ment broke in and shot forth at the end of the passage, encouraging them with new vigour, they went on.

When they arrived at the end, their progress was stopped by an iron grating, which went across the passage, and was fastened with a bolt of the same kind of metal. This, after some vigorous exertions, they contrived one way or another to open, and entered a spacious subterraneous apartment, in the middle of which stood a table, and in it two branches of ninety-five tapers, which illuminated the room in a glorious manner, and made it very beautiful and elegant to behold. On the table, beside these, were some large volumes. On one side of the room stood a sofa; on the other a sideboard, covered with silver goblets, and various vessels, with part of the remains of a flask of wine; and around hung divers articles of attire, and a lute. As they were examining all these things, their ears were suddenly assailed by female shrieks, and the sound of voices. They started up, supposing them to proceed from the lady they were in search of, and running furiously to the end of the room it appeared to come from; discovered there was a grating as on the opposite side, and that it was ajar. They bounded through like lightning, and ran as if distracted along a passage the same as that they had before traversed; then passing through a little suite of five small apartments, with as much haste as they had before done through the passage, they ascended a

staircase, which led up from the farthest one, and beheld in front of them two folding doors.

The noise and clamour which they before had heard but indistinctly, and at a distance, now seemed very near. They sent forth Michael and one of the Baron's son's squires to reconnoitre, and see from whence it proceeded; and in a few moments the former returned, exclaiming, *Sirs, sirs, ye must come this very same identical moment, or it will be too late. Here's the lady ye are in search of* surrounded by I know not how many of those barbarous banditti-like ruffians. No sooner had he said this, than the three knights, springing forward, burst open the folding-doors, through the key-hole of which Michael had seen all this, and found what he said to be true; for there was indeed the lady, surrounded by above a score and a half of the ruffians, who were to all appearance disputing who should have the prize, and making the place resound with their noisy clamour and exclamations; drawing their swords therefore, they rushed into the midst, and began to lay about them very lustily.

The ruffians, amazed at this sudden interruption, hastened in confusion and disorder to oppose them, and defend themselves. The three knights performed prodigies of valour; already were more than half of their opponents stretched breathless on the ground; when Edward, chancing to set his foot on the spring of a trap-door that was concealed in the floor, it opened as it were in an instant, and he fell

through into a dark, damp, and noisome dungeon. He was stunned by the fall, and lay for some time entirely void of sense and recollection.

As soon, however, as he recovered so as to be able to get up, he raised himself, and began feeling about, in order to see if there was no way by which he might escape from the horrible gloom into which he had fallen, but nothing appeared to give him the least hope ; and, seating himself on a huge stone in one corner, which served as a seat to those miserable beings whose misfortune it was to be confined there, he listened to the clashing of arms and noise above. Presently every thing on a sudden became quiet, and not the least noise was to be heard. A cold chill seized him ; his knees smote against one another with great violence ; his eyes were fixed ; while fear and trembling, and the terrible idea of being starved to death in that dismal place, seized hold on him with great violence.

At length, collecting all his courage, he got up, felt for his sword, which had fallen from him in his rapid descent, found it, and began once more to see if there was no manner of outlet, by which he might escape from the horrid gloom of the place. As he cautiously felt along the sides of the dungeon, his hands laid hold on something of an uncommon feel ; and examining it more closely, his horror and disgust was at once aroused, by discovering it to be a dead body ! He turned away from it with horror, and departing to the farther end of the dungeon,



felt about there. As he searched, he was on a sudden much rejoiced to find an inlet in the wall, which from its shape he was pretty certain must be a doorway ; but, alas ! if it was one, it was locked, for all his efforts and endeavours to open it were in vain ; and to find the key was what there was not the least probability of his doing. At that same moment the moon, which had hitherto been concealed behind the clouds, emerging from behind them, and sending forth her rays into the dungeon through the little iron grating, which was the only place by which air and light was admitted, confirmed his suspicion ; and the light darting directly on a little cavity in the wall by the side of the door, he thought he saw something very bright and shining therein. With this notion and fancy in his head, he stretched forth his hand into the hole, and, after feeling about for some little time, drew therefrom a brazen key, which on trial exactly fitted, and belonged to the door. In an ecstasy of joy he applied it to the key-hole ; and having waited a little to recover his strength, he tried to open it ; it was some time before he could succeed, and he even began to be afraid it was only a false door, to delude the miserable beings, who were confined there, with the hopes of escape, and then sink them into disappointment and despair ; yet he thought it very strange that there should be no other means of entrance than that above, through which he had so unfortunately fallen ; and if that he was now trying at was not, there could not be

any, as the light of the moon afforded him now a complete and full view of the whole of the dungeon.

At length, however, he was joyfully delivered from these tormenting reflections, by the door's coming open ; and taking up his sword, which he had laid down for more convenience, he cautiously crept along a vaulted passage, which led down to the dungeon, and which was so low, that he was obliged to stoop in order to proceed. When he got to the end of this, something all on a sudden came brushing past him with such violence, that it nearly knocked him down. No sooner had he recovered, than, collecting all his strength, he followed it, through numerous turnings and windings, to the court, where it turned suddenly off, and disappeared.

He then proceeded a little way ; but had not gone far, when he met with the Baron's two sons, their squires, and the lady, who had been all much amazed at his sudden and extraordinary disappearance ; for the trap-door was of such a construction, that the moment he was through it closed, and came just as it was before ; and as at the moment they were not looking, they could in no wise account for his instantaneous disappearance. However, not thinking it quite safe to stay there, while he was informing and giving them a full account of how it had happened, they sent Michael and their squires to fetch their horses, which had been turned out to feed on the long grass in the court. These were

soon got ready, and, mounting them, they set out at a brisk pace across the heath; and by that time day-light began to appear.

They arrived at the cottage of the peasant, where they found the Lady Ellena in great uneasiness and disquiet at their long absence, they having calculated to arrive much sooner. Their appearance, however, with the object of their expedition, soon dispelled her fears in regard to their safety; and after taking some refreshment, the knights ordered Michael to bring their steeds to the door; and, mounting them, went forth to hunt in the adjoining wood. After proceeding in it a little way, they disturbed and roused from its covert a furious wolf; and, eager in the chase, pursued it for four hours with great ardour; but at the end of that time, Edward, discharging a javelin with a sure aim, laid it breathless on the ground: and returning from their sport, they found the Lady Ellena and her companion in earnest conversation. They therefore entreated the latter to favour them, by relating who she was, and by what means she had fallen into the hands of the ruffians at the castle; with which she complied, and began as follows.

I am the daughter of Lady Philippa Somerset, after whom I am named, and who as well as my father dying while I was yet very young, I was brought up entirely in a monastery, the abbess of which was left to take care of me, until such time as I should be able and old enough to take care of myself.

There I continued until within the last three years, when the queen, under whom the Lady Philippa had formerly served when she was living, invited me to court; and I, pleased with the imagination of the novelties and gaieties with which I should be surrounded, so very different from what I, who had never been above a mile or two from the monastery, had ever seen, readily accepted the offer. Among the foremost of the numerous knights and noblemen who there professed themselves to be my admirers, was one Sir Humphrey de Valence, who was continually tormenting me with his odious addresses.

At this mention of the name of Sir Humphrey, the three knights could scarcely keep their seats; their indignation was so great at his abominable treachery and crimes, and they doubted not but one more was going to be added to the list with which they were already acquainted. Restraining, however, their wrath as well as they could, and concealing it from the ladies, lest it should disturb and offend them, the Lady Philippa proceeded.

This knight, Sir Humphrey, having construed some little civilities, which I had inadvertently and unknowingly paid him, into a great regard for his person, redoubled his assiduities and attentions, which were before scarcely supportable, and would not let me have a moment's peace. If I went to a tournament, he was there: if I went out on a party of pleasure, he was one of the number: if I went to a masquerade or ball, he contrived to be there also:

and when I walked about the palace, or any where else, he was sure always to be close at my heels, tormenting me with his tiresome conversation. In short, I could not go any where, do any thing, or even stir from my own apartment, but what I must needs be continually tormented with this disagreeable monster: for if ever there was a disagreeable monster in the world, he was surely one. His visage was particularly hideous, and he had a great, long, frightful beard, like a fox's tail. His eyes looked wild and staring, and his hair stood on end as if he had been frightened. In short, what with his horrible face and disagreeable manner, he was really quite terrible, and his company insupportable. At length, he had the presumption to demand an interview; and I, not thinking what his intentions were, suffered him to come, hoping that he intended to make some apology, or something of that sort, and then leave me. But what was my astonishment, to find he came only with the intention of completing what he had begun, and declared, without further ceremony, that he was in love! I immediately desired him to leave me; and finding I could not stay longer at court, without being for ever teased with his importunities, so very tiresome, I determined to go back once more to my monastery. Accordingly, having taken leave of the queen, with all my other friends, I returned thither, after having remained at court for above two years and a half.

I now heard no more of this disagreeable Sir Hum-

phrey for above two months, so that I began to entertain hopes that the monster had given me up, and gone after some other fair damsel, who would be more disposed to listen and attend to his addresses. But one fine evening, as I was walking with the lady abbess and one of the nuns in the gardens of the monastery, and admiring the beauty of the sun, which was just setting, two men all on a sudden rushed from behind a little summer house, and, seizing hold of me, carried me, notwithstanding my endeavours, and the cries and entreaties of my companions, to the farther end of a wall, which was the boundary of the grounds, where ascending a rope ladder, by which they had got over, they contrived to get me over after them; and seating me on a horse, which was waiting to take me up on the other side, one of them got on with me, and spurring it on, the others, for there were several besides the two who first carried me away, soon followed.

At night they stopped at an ruinous kind of a palace, between a house and castle, for it could not be called either. Here, as soon as I had taken some refreshment, I went to a room in one of the turrets. On examining, I found that it must have been aired and prepared some time previous, and therefore my being carried off I knew was a premeditated scheme, but of whose I could not tell.

On the next morning I was called up, and proceeded in the same manner as before. I attempted to get something out of the men who conducted

me, and get them to help me in making my escape; and at length one of them, taking advantage of the moment when his companion's attention was engaged on something else, made a sign that he would come to me when we stopped at the place where we were to pass the night. Encouraged by this success, I was quite rejoiced when the time came, and, as I had done on the evening before, went to my room as soon as possible. After waiting for above an hour and a half, the men, as I suppose, went to sleep, and my man came up, and softly opened the door. He as cautiously shut it again, and we then began consulting what was best to be done. Many plans were formed, and then rejected as unsafe; and at the end of an hour our meeting ended, by his telling me it would be impossible for me to get off, and escape, until I arrived at the end of my journey, which he said would be next day, as his companions were asleep in the room underneath through which we must pass in order to get out, and with the noise we must necessarily make on opening the door, and going through, they would awake, and we should be undone. No sooner had he said this, than we heard a noise underneath; and knowing it to be one of the men, who must have awoken, he hastened down, lest, being found away, they might suspect what was going forward, and prevent any such thing for the future. He got down just in time to prevent a discovery; though, as good fortune would have it, the man who awoke

was drunk, and did not therefore know what was going forward.

The next day about noon we got to the castle, at the gate of which, to my very great astonishment, stood Sir Humphrey ; who no sooner saw me, than he came up, and would have renewed his importunities ; but I turned away from him with contempt : and he, finding it in vain, told the man to take me to my room, and then to my great joy went away. I was ushered into a little room, in a long passage, where the hours passed tediously away between that time and night, when my man had promised to come to me.

At length the time came, and we held a grand consultation, in which he informed me, that if I would wait till eleven o'clock at night, the banditti, whom he said lived in the castle, would be either asleep, or intoxicated ; so that we might get away unperceived, and escape. This I agreed to ; and at that time descended by secret ways to the court, where he had previously provided two of the best horses belonging to the robbers ; and getting on these, we set out. For all that night and next day we went on without interruption ; but towards evening, we met a party of the banditti of the castle, who, knowing who we were, seized, and carried us back. I was carried, and my man dragged, across the court ; and instead of being taken to my first apartment, I was conducted to those subterraneous ones, which, from the direction in which you



came when you delivered me, you must have passed. Here the abominable Sir Humphrey came that very same evening to visit me, and I made not the least scruple of avowing my detestation of him in stronger terms than ever; at which it seems he was so enraged, that he declared he would give the ruffians permission to do what they pleased with me. And this threat I soon found he meant to put in execution; for on the next evening, or rather night, finding the grating of my prison left a little way open, I ventured out, and had hardly got to the place where you found me, when I was surrounded by them, and, in a few moments after, you rushed in to my assistance, and delivered me from their hands.

Thus did the Lady Philippa end her account; and the knights, who could no longer contain themselves, began venting their indignation. Edward in particular exclaimed, What is this Sir Humphrey that he should carry off all the damsels in the kingdom! He would fain have a seraglio, and live in splendor like unto a Turkish prince! No, not while I have existence shall he do it. The other two knights exactly agreed with him in opinion, and they formed together a most discordant concert; to which Michael, who just then entered, and having tripped over a huge piece of stone, and fallen into the mire, added not a little. So that after some time, the ladies, whose ears were unused to such a sound, were much disturbed with it, and went into

another apartment. At length, however, the knights having vented their wrath, and the squire his complaints at his misfortune, they returned; and the former made many apologies for having disturbed them, which they readily accepted, being very far from offended at their zeal.

They stayed at the peasant's cottage for three days more, and then set out on their journey towards the Baron's castle. At night they stopped at a house by the way-side; and Edward declared his intention of leaving them, and making a tour round the country. Accordingly, next day, leaving the other two knights to escort the ladies home, he pursued his journey. And now, leaving him for a short space, we will proceed to relate what happened to them on their way.

They proceeded very well until they were got within a day's journey of the castle; when, stopping for the night at a house on the road, a numerous band of men followed them in, who forthwith began drinking and making merry, and invited the knights to partake of their merriment; which they, fearing lest they should give offence by refusing, complied with. But no sooner had they done this, than the caitiffs took forth a certain kind of composition, and contrived by some means or other to infuse it into the wine which the knights were to drink. As soon as they had swallowed this, they felt themselves seized with a great drowsiness, and in a short time fell fast asleep.

When they awoke, they looked around, and found, lo and behold! that the caitiffs, ladies, and every thing were gone. They got up, and, going to the stables, where their squires were feeding and attending on their horses, enquired whether they knew what was become of them? To which they replied, that the caitiffs had been there for their horses; and that not knowing any thing of their intentions, they had let them go. At this information the two knights were half distracted; and as soon as it was day-light, they mounted their steeds, and set out full speed to the Baron's castle; where they arrived about noon, and found him in great uneasiness and alarm for the Lady Ellena: for after the ruffians seizing and carrying her off in the wood, they had let her maid go; and she having gone and informed the Baron of what had happened, this put him into a most terrible alarm, as he had sent messengers to all the places round, and could not gain the least intelligence of her. Nor did the account of the knights serve much to lessen it; for when he heard, that at the very moment, as it were, that she was about once more to arrive at the castle, she had been again carried off in such a provoking manner, he could no longer contain himself, and began loudly to lament his fate, and utter exclamations of sorrow.

Sir Francis, who was still with him, and the two young knights, having at length succeeded in lessening his grief, and the latter having promised

to use their utmost diligence in finding out what was become of, and once more delivering, the Lady Ellena and her companion, with whose name Sir Francis fancied he was acquainted, they set out, with the intention of joining their friend Edward at the shores opposite the Isle of Wight, which was the place they had appointed previous to their parting. There they, after a pleasant journey, arrived, and found him at the cottage, or rather hut, of a fisherman, which was built on the sea-shore.

The day after their arrival, as they were riding on the beach, consulting which way they should go, they all on a sudden perceived two knights in armour approaching them at a considerable distance, who, when they came near enough to be within hearing, stopped; and one of them, lifting up his vizor, and raising his voice, exclaimed, "O valorous knights, you will surely, if you do not yet know of the abominable doings in the Isle of Wight, not refuse your assistance and aid in a cause, which, when you have heard it, you will confess not only to be commendable and honourable, but even necessary to be conformable unto the rules of chivalry; which is, that knights should defend and protect all injured damsels." Thus spoke the knight, and stopped; and Edward, with the Baron's two sons, having approached nearer, enquired what they meant. To which the knight, having with the other turned their horses the same way with Edward and his companions, answered, "You have not then yet

heard of the strange and shameful doings which are going on in the opposite island. As myself and my companion were journeying along the high-roads, our ears were assailed with the sound, *Merriment and mirth*; and, looking round, perceived it to come from a vast castle-like edifice; and on enquiring into the cause, we were told by the peasantry, that the castle belonged to a certain caitiff, whose power and riches were very extensive, and who had no less than fifteen galleys, and an hundred retainers, which he dispersed in different places. And that moreover at his castle there were no less than five and twenty damsels, which his followers had taken, of various ranks. Enraged at this information, we immediately set out in search of some knights, who might assist us in delivering these damsels, we being by ourselves too small a force to execute it; and coming over hither, met with you, O valorous knights, when, trusting to your gallantry, we addressed you for the purpose ye have heard."

Thus did the knight end his speech, and the three knights consented to their request, as from what he had said, they entertained a suspicion that the Lady Ellena and her companion might be amongst the damsels in the caitiff's castle. They therefore conducted the other two knights, whose names were Sir Orlando Hogernalf and Sir Roland Fitzgerman; to the fisherman's hut, whose boat they hired to convey them over to the island, in which the object of their expedition was centered.

Having left their horses at the hut, they with their squires went on board the boat; and rowing off, they about noon landed at the place of destination; where having procured a disguise to put over their armour, they went to the castle, and knocked. The gate was opened, and they pretending to have been shipwrecked on the coast the night before in a storm, which, there having been a very high one, was extremely probable, they were admitted, and conducted to the chief or head caitiff; who received them very gravely, and ordered his men to see to them. About the middle of the day, they caught a glimpse of the damsels who were in the castle, and whom the caitiff regularly conversed with every day, when to their great joy they found their suspicions well founded, as both the Lady Elena and Philippa were amongst them: and they had an opportunity, while the caitiff was employed in attending to one of the other damsels, (for he conversed with them by turns,) to go up, and whisper to them that they were there, and should attempt their deliverance, and that therefore they must be in readiness against the night.

When the time came, the caitiffs began drinking, and, not minding their guests, were in a short time drunk. Presently they fell asleep. The knights, taking advantage of their defenceless situation, got up, and, throwing off their disguise, secured their hands fast behind them, and then went up to the rooms, which they had found out the damsels in-

habited, and to which they had retired, from whence they liberated them; and the damsels, to whom the Lady Ellena had communicated the intelligence that the knights were there, received them with such an exclamation of joy and noise, that awoke the caitiffs below; who, finding themselves with their hands fastened behind them, and their guests gone, immediately guessed what had occasioned it, and began swearing and running against one another, as the only means of venting their vexation.

In a short time, however, the knights came down, at whose appearance they became more quiet, and awaited in silence the decision of their fate; when Edward, advancing, thus addressed the chief caitiff: "Thou knowest, O caitiff, that by the law thou wouldest be hanged; nevertheless, as thou hast not done as many with thy power would, nor violated the damsels in thy possession, (for this he had learnt of them on their liberation,) but contentedst thyself with enjoying their company and conversation, we will be satisfied with depriving thee of the means to do so for the future." Then, addressing himself to the others, "But as for you, ye abominable miscreants, as you have been sharers and assistants in the crimes and errors of your chief, without being partakers in his merit, you must be delivered up to justice." Here he stopped; and the chief caitiffs, who had hitherto been quite silent, began making many thanks; while the others observed a sul-

len degree of silence, well knowing how little they had to expect from a prince, who enforced and put the laws in execution with so much vigour as the present monarch.

Michael was then dispatched to the next town for a magistrate, to take the caitiffs in charge; and in a short time he returned, bringing with him a venerable justice, and a large party of his men; who having taken away their charge, the five knights passed the rest of the evening very pleasantly, in festivity and mirth, with the damsels.

After remaining at the castle for three days, the different ladies departed to their respective homes, and the knights, with their squires, the Ladies Elena and Philippa, and another damsel, with whom they had contracted a close intimacy while in captivity in the caitiff's domain, went back in the fisherman's boat to the hut; where, after staying one night, Sir Orlando and Sir Rowland parted from them to pursue their journey; and the other three knights escorted the ladies home, where they were joyfully received by the Baron. Nor was Sir Francis an unconcerned spectator, as he now recollected and found the Lady Philippa was his niece: and as she did not appear to have any inclination to return to the monastery, he resolved to do as he had done by Edward, and take her into his family, as a better and more suitable situation, than to be entirely alone and unprotected. Accordingly he declared to her his intention; with which she was much pleased,



and acceded to it with pleasure; and every thing was settled that it should be so.

The ladies accounted for their sudden and vexatious disappearance, by relating what has already been mentioned, that the caitiffs had mingled a certain composition in the wine, which the knights drank, the effects of which were so strong and powerful, that the noise they made, when the men attempted to carry them off, in order to awake them, failed in its intended purpose: and Michael, who was heartily rejoiced at once more getting back to the castle, and not running into the risks attendant on his squireship, could scarce contain himself for joy.

Sir Francis had now been nearly four months at the castle of the Baron; so taking leave of him, he set out a fortnight after the return of the knights on his journey homewards.

## CHAPTER III.

**ON** the journey, Sir Francis had an opportunity of seeing to advantage the virtues and excellent qualities of Edward. He every day discovered fresh ones, and the prepossession he had at first entertained in his favour was not at all lessened, but on the contrary much increased, and indeed not without reason; as the young knight had, in the short space which he had continued in the Baron's castle, demeaned himself with such regard and solicitude for the pleasure and comfort of his benefactor, as might verily have turned a heart of flint in his favour.

Sir Francis having some business of great importance to transact in London, which he wished to settle before he returned to his own estate, they stopped for some days in that city; during which time Sir Francis was informed of the death of the old King, as he was going on an expedition against the Scots; and that the young Prince had been, and, having concluded a truce, the army was returning. These were things which gave Sir Francis very great uneasiness, as the young Prince had always, in the occasional visits to court which he had made

since his retirement, expressed a great dislike to him ; and though he did not believe it amounted of itself to a sufficient height to do him any very great mischief, yet he had another subject much stronger, and which for many reasons made him dread the effects of the young Prince's having absolute power. While he had the old King to look to for protection, he had nothing to fear ; but now this support was gone, he knew not what to expect, might arise out of the close intimacy of the Prince with Peter Gaveston, who was then becoming a great favourite, as he had prevailed on the King to prohibit their keeping company together. This had by some means or other come to the ears of the favourite, who, enraged at it, immediately regarded him as a person who was his rival, and continually employed in working his destruction. From such an enemy, therefore, Sir Francis thought there was but little to expect, and doubted not but that the Prince, to gratify his favourite, would provide him the means to do any thing he pleased. These uneasy reflections, however, he kept from the knowledge of Edward and the Lady Philippa, lest it should disturb them with dismal apprehensions ; and having settled the business which had caused his stay to his satisfaction, he pursued his journey homewards.

At length he arrived at his estate, where, to his great astonishment and grief, he learned that

Sir Humphrey de Valence had lately purchased a large estate and domain in the neighbourhood ; and, indeed, there was nothing but a kind of grove or wood that separated the border of it from Sir Francis's. He therefore could not think his niece safe out of his sight ; and once she was nearly being met by him, when walking in the wood. Sir Francis, therefore, as he had some friends in France, resolved to go over thither, and, if his friends were yet living, seek an asylum with them ; and if not, to go to some retirement, and there live the rest of his life in peace and quietness, or at least until such a time as he could with safety return to his own country. So addressing himself to Edward and the Lady Philippa, as one afternoon they were endeavouring by their conversation to enliven him, and drive away the gloom with which his countenance was overspread, he thus began : “ I had once hoped to spend the latter part of my days in my native country, but I now find that it is likely to be otherwise : it is necessary that we should depart as soon as possible from this place. You will therefore get ready, and prepare the things which you intend to take with you, to be in readiness against the wind becomes favourable, that there may then be no delay. The knight and lady therefore went to their respective apartments, to collect together and pack their little stock of goods. This job was, however, soon done, as the armour and hunting utensils of

the former composed the chief part of his store; and a few articles of attire, with drawing machines, constituted the whole of the latter: these were removed to the little vessel, which Sir Francis had hired for the purpose of conveying them over to the continent, and which was anchored beneath the cliffs, on the top of which was situated the mansion and estate of Sir Francis.

Nothing was now wanting but a fair wind, as he had previously dismissed all his attendants, except those few which he intended to accompany him in his voyage, and this was on the following afternoon granted them. Leaving therefore the house, they descended a steep path, which led down to the sea side, where a boat was waiting for them, to carry them to the ship; and as they stepped into the bark, Edward and the Lady Philippa could not help casting a look of regret behind them: Michael likewise, who was one of the party, was in a most violent rage at coming away from their own country, and ceased not a most vehement harangue for a whole hour; and would have kept on much longer, had he not been checked by Sir Francis, who silenced him in a moment.

The evening being very fine, the Lady Philippa remained seated on deck, watching the motion of the vessel, as, swiftly gliding before the wind, it cut through the waves, and left a long track behind it; which, being illuminated by the rays of the set-

ting sun sparkled with great brilliancy. A fresh breeze wafting them from the shore, soon carried them out of sight of the white cliffs.

As she sat thus, her thoughts assumed a poetical turn, and she was just about to put on paper a short sonnet, when a most tremendous clap of thunder, which was followed by several others of less force, aroused her from these reflections. Immediately the sky became overspread with clouds of a black, fiery, and hideous aspect, which, piled in long columns in the air, seemed by their horrible appearance to portend a very violent storm. The sails were quickly furled up by the mariners; and ere she could reach the steps which descended into the little cabin, where Sir Francis and Edward were seated, the waves, which had for some time past been becoming gradually more and more agitated, beat with considerable violence against the side of the vessel. While the former assisted the mariners in guiding the ship, with one of Sir Francis's servants, the latter remained below to quiet the fears of the Lady Philippa; for she, having never been on the water before, began now to be somewhat terrified: as was likewise Michael, who, huddled up in one corner of the room, lamented aloud more than ever their leaving England, and, expecting every moment the ship would go to the bottom, and that they should be swallowed up in the waves, (though indeed the storm had but yet attained to a small and trifling degree of violence,) hardly dared to look up, lest his eyes

should be assailed with the fearful sight of the sea, pouring into the vessel in vast showers.

The fears of the Lady Philippa were of such a nature, as soon to be destroyed by a small portion of reasoning; but those of Michael were such, that argument had not the least effect in conquering them, but rather served to aggravate than lessen. When Sir Francis therefore argued with him on the very little ground there was for his terrors, he only exclaimed, with great vehemence, on the vast pity it was to leave their own country, and the moral impossibility of folks restraining themselves when in a fright; interspersing at intervals a "nid not," or some other of his expressions. Finding that it was all in vain, Sir Francis left the squire to vent his terror as he pleased, and seated himself on the floor, the rocking of the vessel being too great to admit of his resting himself on a chair; indeed he was forced to lay hold on the side, to prevent being seen rolling about. A still silence pervaded the cabin, which was only interrupted by the occasional noise of the men above, and the loud exclamations of Michael, who sent forth most doleful and piteous cries, when the ship, after being carried by the waves mountains high, was all on a sudden precipitated down into a horrible depth.

Thus did the night pass out, and at day-light the storm was somewhat abated; but the vessel presented a very dismal spectacle, and was much damaged: they, however, continued to sail on as fast

as possible, and at noon discovered something dark at a distance, which they at first supposed to be land ; but when they approached nearer, they found to their great disappointment that it was nothing more than a vessel. This vessel presently approached them, and they found to their great alarm that it was a pirate. The crew of the bark, in which Sir Francis was, consisted at first of only fifteen men, and of these four had been washed overboard, and perished during the storm ; so that the number was reduced to eleven. The pirate had at least five or six and twenty ; added to which, instead of being injured in the storm, it was quite fresh out of port, and consequently every way greatly superior. The mariners stared at each other, and looked aghast ; and Michael, trembling like a leaf for fear, began to harangue most vehemently, and declaimed against their ever having gone from their own country. It was too late for this to be of any service ; yet he had a satisfaction in setting forth any thing that was likely to support and give credit to his own opinion. Thus did he begin : “ I thought as how we should find no good, but get us into some hobble and scrape, by coming prancing away from our own land ; and now do ye see we shall be snapped up by these what-d’ye-call-em pirate men. Egad, I never thought we should be the better for this voyage, not I indeed, I can tell ye ; I shant relish being cooped up like a bird in a cage, all for nothing.” Thus he vented his vexation, until he had



exhausted his whole store of invectives and complaints ; when, not being able to keep on for lack of language to repeat, he was forced to be silent.

Edward after some time succeeded in inciting the men to a vigorous resistance ; and encouraging them by his example, they, notwithstanding their inferiority, succeeded in repulsing three vigorous attacks of the pirates, and finally drove them off, with considerable loss ; when, pursuing their voyage, they arrived in the evening about dusk at the place of their destination, which was a little port on the coast of France.

Here Sir Francis landed with his household ; and wrote letters to his friends, who had formerly lived about fifteen leagues off, to know if they were yet alive, and desiring them, if they were, to let him know immediately. After these were dispatched, he waited for some time in hopes of receiving answers ; but at the end of that time, which was three whole weeks, his letters were returned unopened ; and he knew by this that his friends were dead, and their estates and possessions fallen into other hands. He therefore determined to try and find out some pleasant retirement, and there retreat with his little household : for this purpose he went once more on board the vessel, and, sailing a few miles farther up the coast, anchored in a little kind of bay, or creek, by the side of a large majestic forest, in the midst of which the white towers of an ancient and elegant castle reared themselves above

the surrounding trees, and commanded an extensive view of the ocean. Here it was that Sir Francis proposed to stop, hoping, as the castle was to all appearance, at the distance he beheld it, and by the small part he could see, uninhabited, he might get permission of the owner, to whomsoever it belonged, to reside there. Going therefore in a boat on shore, he ascended the beach with his people, and entered the long avenue, which to all appearance led to the house or castle. In this every thing bore marks of dreariness and desolation ; the gravel walk was quite covered and choaked up with weeds and long grass ; the trees were half of them dead, or decaying, for want of proper care ; and the leaves, which lay in quantities on the ground, added not in a small degree to the dismal appearance of the place. It was then the beginning of November, and a chill blast howled through the trees, and disturbed the leaves, which yet remained on the branches. Sir Francis thought the avenue would have no end ; but at length, to his great joy, he caught a glimpse of the building through the trees, and in a very few moments found himself in the court beneath it. The castle looked equally dismal with the avenue that led to it ; the windows were all shut up, and it seemed quite deserted and uninhabited. The gate was unfastened ; but Sir Francis did not like to enter, and take possession of it, without first obtaining leave. He therefore dispatched Michael forth to see if there was any person living near the estate,

who might have the care of the castle, and sufficient authority to admit them as residents there.

After waiting about half an hour, he began to be impatient ; and for amusement he resolved to walk round the building. Accordingly he did so ; and the more he saw of it, the more he wished that he might be able to obtain it for a residence. When he got to the other side, he heard Michael bawling out to him ; and going to him, found that he had brought with him an old man of about seventy, whose name was Anthony, by which name we shall hereafter call him. On enquiring, he found that this man had the charge of the castle, and was entire manager. He therefore informed him of his wish, and enquired if it were possible for him to inhabit the place : to which Anthony replied, that if he had courage, and chose to encounter the occasional visits of evil spirits, he was very welcome, as the owner of the estate, which was a certain noble marquis of Normandy, never came there, for very particular reasons, and he was left merely to keep it from falling to ruin entirely.

Sir Francis therefore, who regarded not in the least the first part of the speech, gladly laid hold on such a favourable opportunity of procuring a pleasant residence for himself and his household, to the great discomfort, terror, and dissatisfaction of Michael ; who no sooner heard evil spirits mentioned, than he fell into a most violent shake and tremble, and fancied almost that he beheld appari-

tions, ghosts, and spectres gliding about in the forest. Nor was Michael the only one who was under the influence of those fears; for Margaret, the Lady Philippa's maid, experienced them likewise in a great degree; so that when Anthony opened the door of the castle, and shewed them into the great hall, they threw a fearful glance around, and fancied spirits were standing against the walls.

After shewing them through the castle, Anthony conducted Sir Francis and his party to a little chapel on the north side, whose marble pillars, tottering with neglect, but ill supported a massive carved roof, and seemed every moment as if they would give way. Here he pointed out to the party some very elegant monuments, and various articles worth notice; but as he did this, Sir Francis could not help observing that he trembled in a violent degree, and cast at times a fearful look around the place, particularly towards the altar, which stood at the farther end of the chapel: he therefore enquired the cause of it. His conductor informed him, that twenty years ago, a certain lady, of the family to which the castle belonged, had been poisoned, and that ever since that time her ghost had been in the habit of sitting on the altar, and walking about the chapel, lamenting her fate. Sir Francis, therefore, knowing that with such fears the shewing them through the chapel must needs be a very disagreeable job, went out of it; and although he regarded not what Anthony had said about the ghost, he felt

a curiosity to know the particulars of the death of this lady that had been poisoned. He enquired of him, if he was acquainted with the circumstances attending it: to which he replied, that he was not himself much acquainted with it, but that there was in the castle a certain manuscript, giving a full account of it.

The next thing now to be done was the selecting of the apartments which they were to occupy; and after some consideration and deliberation, six were chosen out from the rest, of the least decayed, and which were, to the great joy of Michael, at the end of the building quite opposite the chapel. They then set about airing, and rendering them habitable with comfort in a tolerable degree. This job took them up until night; when, by the indefatigable exertions of Edward and the Lady Philippa, assisted by Sir Francis and the whole household, the apartments were tolerably aired, the crannies, crevices, and holes stopped up, and the dust and rubbish, which had been accumulating ever since the departure of the owner, was cleared up. The towers, overgrown with ivy, began insensibly to lose their damp dismal aspect, and assume an air of cheerfulness, which being inhabited alone could give, that being the only thing that could possibly check the rapid ruin and destruction which was then prevailing, and prevent its falling entirely to decay.

The household of Sir Francis was as follows, and the rooms were appropriated accordingly. He had

brought with him, besides Michael and Margaret, two other attendants, a man and a woman, whereof the former was named Oswald, and the latter Mary. Now Oswald was the very reverse of Michael, and, instead of being afraid of evil spirits, feared not any thing, and had not the least notion of ghosts; so that he looked on the terrors of the squire as laughable and ridiculous. Mary likewise was not subject to those fears, which held such complete power and dominion over her two fellow-servants. These two therefore occupied the apartment which was situated nearest to the end of the building where the chapel was; Edward, with his squire Michael, had the next; the Lady Philippa with her maid took up a third; and Sir Francis a fourth. The other two were employed, one as a sitting room, and the other as a kitchen.

Thus were things disposed on the first night, when the whole of the party, being much fatigued with the events of the day, retired early to rest. But it was long ere the eyes of the fearful squire, or Margaret, were closed in sleep; for their terror of spirits, and lest the ghost of the poisoned lady should take it into its head to visit them, kept them wide awake; and by their fears they likewise disturbed the Lady Philippa and Edward in such an intolerable degree, that it verily was quite insupportable. They reasoned with them in vain; reasoning had not the least effect; nor was it until they were wearied with their own exclamations and idle fears, that they fell asleep.

Every thing was then perfectly still, solemn, and silent, and nought intervened to disturb the mournful quiet, but the hollow murmurings of the wind among the trees around, and the dismal screams of the owl, soaring forth at midnight, when all the rest of nature is wrapped in silence and repose, to make its solitary nocturnal excursion.

In the midst of this dead quietness Sir Francis awoke : he had dreamed, that he was in the castle of the Baron Fitzclarence, at a grand rejoicing, in celebration of the marriage of Edward with the Lady Ellena : there every thing wore the appearance of gaiety and merriment, and nothing appeared to interrupt the festivity of the scene. The sudden contrast of so dismal a scene, as that into which he awoke, with one of rejoicing and mirth so unbounded as he had but the moment before fancied himself in, struck him with a gloomy turn ; and he thought how unlikely it was that he should ever behold those dreams realized ; yet at the same time he could not help having a presentiment that he should one day see them fulfilled. Agitated between these two very opposite and contrary emotions, he continued a short time awake ; but fatigue suffered him not long to indulge in these reflections ; and he once more sunk into a state of forgetfulness and sleep.

The night passed on : morning at length appeared ; and the forest rays of the sun, breaking through the long Gothic casement into the apart-

ments, awoke Edward ; who, starting up, dressed himself, and, seizing a hunting spear, went forth in the forest to hunt, leaving Michael snoring aloud to enjoy himself, and take his full portion of sleep. After being gone about two hours, he came back ; and on his return found Sir Francis and the Lady Philippa descended to the sitting room, where Margaret, having brought in a suit of breakfast things, which had been rummaged up the preceding day from among the stores of the castle for present use, they seated themselves by the side of an oaken table, which, though considerably mutilated and defaced, yet retained sufficient of its former ornaments to shew that it had once been very elegant and magnificent. The windows of the room overlooked the trees and shrubbery around the castle, and commanded an extensive view of the sea on one side ; on the other the distant country and hills formed a beautiful landscape. In this delightful retirement, Sir Francis found his spirits gradually restored to their proper height, and his household, who had no evil thoughts to trouble their imaginations, were for the most part delighted, except when the fearful part of it were influenced by the dread of visits from the ghost.

Time passed on, and they had now been a fortnight at their new habitation. There was a certain walk which led around on the outside of the forest, along the sea-shore, to the cottage, or hovel, of Anthony, in which Sir Francis, leaning on the arm of



the Lady Philippa, loved of a fine afternoon to walk, while Edward was pursuing his sport in the adjoining forest. It was in one of these walks that, as they were returning home towards the castle, the sun being just about to set, and as they were viewing the waves, but just agitated by a soft breeze, and rolling with an almost imperceptible motion and sound towards the shore, they on a sudden perceived a white speck, as it were, on the ocean. Surprised at this, as from the calmness of the weather it was next to impossible for it to be the surge, they stopped, and fixed their eyes for a moment on the spot; when on its approaching nearer, they discovered it to be a sail, which was apparently approaching the shore where they stood. Perfectly astonished at this, they seated themselves on a stone bench, in order to watch the progress of the vessel. It, as they expected, came towards the shore, and then sailing up the little creek, in which Sir Francis had landed, there anchored; when a boat came on shore with twelve persons in it, whereof three were females, four mariners, and the rest apparently knights with their squires. Sir Francis therefore, being impatient to know who it was, got up, and walked towards the boat to enquire; when what was his astonishment, to behold the Baron Fitzclarence, with his two sons, and their squires, the Lady Ellena, her maid, and the young damsel, who, as it has before been mentioned, accompanied her from the caitiff's castle! After expressing his surprise, and passing the usual

compliments, he enquired what had brought him there. To which the Baron replied, that he had left the country for the same purpose as Sir Francis; and that having landed at the village or port in which Sir Francis had before stopped, he had there gotten information that he had gone on along the coast a short time before. He had come after him, in hopes of inhabiting the same place, as he had likewise found out the place where Sir Francis was. They therefore walked towards the castle, where, as soon as they arrived, Michael was dispatched to search for Edward to entertain the young knights, and the Lady Philippa entertained her two companions.

Edward had at the usual time repaired to the place where he generally met Sir Francis and his niece on their return home, when he was somewhat surprised to find them not there; but supposing that they had passed on before, and gone home, he pursued the path that led to the castle. Sir Francis had then gone down to speak with the Baron on the beach, and he arrived at the castle, and crossed the hall, without being perceived by any one. Going up stairs, and finding Sir Francis was not as he expected in the sitting room, he went to his own apartment; where he had not been seated a quarter of an hour, before Michael came running in, and exclaimed, "Laud, sir, ye are wanted this very moment down stairs; this very moment must ye come." "Wanted, said Edward, what am I wanted

about in such haste? I hope nothing terrible has happened? I hope Sir Francis—" "Laud, sir, cried Michael, what a notion! There's nothing terrible happened, I can assure ye; no, but on the contrary, very good news, and very excellent doings." "What good news and fine doings," said Edward, who could not any way imagine the meaning and purport of all this. "Why, sir, here's the Baron Fitz—what-d'ye-call-um—clarence, and his two sons, that ye travelled about with I know not how long, and had like to have got into such horrible scrapes with, said Michael; nay, what's more, there is the Lady Ellena, that ye delivered out of an old castle, and that I thinks as how ye be in love with, and that other damsel that ye brought away from the caitiff's castle. They came here in a vessel this afternoon, and be all assembled in the great sitting room, and the knights they are waiting for ye to come and entertain 'em. I have been all over the forest in search of ye, and thought as how the ghost had carried ye off; and so this is what ye are wanted so very urgently for." "I think, said Edward, you take strange notions into your head, and talk very oddly about my being in love; pray, where did you ever see any thing to encourage you in the fancy of these vagaries and nonsense?" "Ah, sir! cried Michael, ye need not think to make folks believe but what ye are in love, as has seen as much of ye as I have, that ye nid not. Why here, I have but spoke of it just in a light sort of way, and ye are all in a flutter,

as though the greatest evil in the world had betided ye." "And is it not enough to put me in a flutter, when people impute to one such things as you have just been laying to my charge? Is it not very vexations and disagreeable to be for ever worried and teased with a repetition of such idle nonsense?" cried Edward, endeavouring to conceal the confusion into which these two unexpected speeches had thrown him, but which, notwithstanding, was but too evident. "Egad, said the squire, it's of no use to keep on so; if ye did not have some concern in it, ye would not bristle up in such a wrath. I warrant knights have fallen in love before now, and so ye be not the only one, and nid not make such a mighty fuss. But volks has other business than waiting up here; I be wanted down stairs; so I would be glad if ye would tell me what I am to say, and let me go, lest I get scolded for not minding my work." "You may say then, that I will be down as soon as possible," said Edward, glad to get rid of his troublesome company; and no sooner had he said this, than he was gone.

He then tried to recover himself from his agitation, into which the sudden and unexpected news that the Lady Ellena was below had thrown him; and having at length collected all his resolution, and considering that if he stayed longer it might appear strange, he descended the stairs, and found the knights vastly impatient of his stay. He saluted them, the Baron, and the Lady Barba-

rina, without having any attacks of his confusion; but when he came to the Lady Ellena, all his resolution failed: the formal speech which he had prepared was instantly forgotten; and, after making half a dozen blunders in as many sentences, he was forced to stop; while the Lady Ellena, to prevent being observed, as she easily conceived the cause of it, turned away, as if every thing had passed quite properly: and the Lady Barbarina, who at that moment came up, declared he was vastly improved since she last saw him.

This damsel, who, as it has already been mentioned, was the same as they delivered from the catiffs, was heirress to a very immense domain; but both her parents having died when she was very young, she had been entrusted to the care of an old uncle of above seventy, who, loving indolence and ease, scrupled not, for his own peculiar comfort, to commit her entirely to the superintendence and instruction of an usher, whom he hired for a most exorbitant premium. But this, as he was possessed of ample means to discharge, signified not one straw. Now this venerable personage, having a very peculiar aversion and dislike to the very strict manner in which the damsels of those times were brought up in old desolate places, and not permitted to stir one inch, did not hesitate to acquire favour with his mistress, to let her have much more liberty than was advisable, and permit the attentions of certain gallant knights in the neighbourhood. But as one

evening they were returning from an appointment with a certain knight, named Sir Thomas Graham; they were met by the caitiff's retainers, who, having secured the usher from preventing their designs, carried the lady off to the castle of their chief, where she remained until the arrival of the knights, and afterwards remained with the Lady Ellena, and accompanied the Baron on his leaving England.

The ceremony of the first salutation being over, the evening passed away very pleasantly; when towards night they began to consult on their future plans. After much deliberation and consultation, it was finally fixed, resolved on, and determined, that some more of the apartments of the castle should be aired, and repaired for the new arrived party, sufficient to contain them all with comfort, and they should live as it were in one household. This being resolved on, and the most important point determined, they retired to rest for the night; and the next day began to select the rooms which they should occupy; which job, with the repairing and fitting up, took a week before it was entirely completed. Michael was mightily rejoiced, as he supposed, more rooms being taken into use, that the ghost, not having so much room to wander undisturbed in the night, would discontinue its visits.

At length this business was finished; about one-third of the apartments in the castle were now occupied, and winter beginning to set hard in, Anthony was with some difficulty persuaded to remove from

his hovel, and come and reside in the castle. Both Sir Francis and the Baron loved to hear the recital of adventures and anecdotes ; and Anthony having the power of relating them to great advantage, they delighted much in his conversation, and were extremely solicitous for his company. Anthony had in his younger days seen much of the world ; he had travelled into various foreign countries, and been in many different places. Having a great love of wonders and the marvellous, he had contrived in his travels, by perusing and poring over certain Arabian books, containing accounts of the wondrous performances and works of great and sage magicians, to instil into his memory and recollection a tolerable stock of these marvellous accounts, to all of which he paid implicit credit, and believed that every one of them had in their time been performed. And though the Baron and Sir Francis believed not a single word of them, yet they were pleased and amused by the recital, which art Anthony piqued himself on possessing to great perfection.

When therefore the days closed in, and became too short to admit of walking in the afternoon, they passed the time in listening to these recitals. As the weather became colder, Sir Francis established a regulation, that after it was dusk, as fuel was very scarce, and they dared not to cut down any of the trees in the wood for that purpose, that the whole of the household, great and small, should be assembled together in the sitting room, to prevent there being

a fire in more rooms than were absolutely necessary, they being but just able to make shift, by clearing up the underwood and thickets that grew about the castle, to procure enough to keep up what fire was necessary. It was when thus assembled round the extensive stove, that Anthony set forth and displayed his talent to advantage; and Michael listened unto the tales of some valiant and adventurous knight, to deliver his mistress from the hands of some crafty and subtle magician, or from the enchanted castle of a mighty genius, or to the wondrous performances of some skilful necromancer, until, trembling with terror, he cast his eyes around, expecting every moiment some horrible spirit, or a genius of evil design, to enter, and carry off the party, nay, perhaps, the castle too.

In this manner did the evenings pass away, and winter at length, after a tedious series of snow, cold wind, and rain, arrived at the middle. It was now unsafe to walk out alone; the wolves, not finding a sufficient supply of provisions in their usual retreats, came down from their native wilds to ravage the surrounding country, and carried devastation wherever they went. The forest round the castle, from the thickness and intricacy of the trees, served them for a commodious retirement after their predatory excursions; as likewise, from its abounding with deer, hares, and other sorts of smaller animals, they there could find a supply, if it was too warm, so that the peasants could come forth to op-



pose them, for their more extensive excursions. Thither therefore they came in vast numbers, or flocks, and took up their residence, so that the ladies were obliged to keep wholly within doors; and the knights never went out but together, and their squires always accompanied them.

Michael, who relished not this at all, was in continual fear of being devoured, and was more than ever vexed that they had settled there. He had no notion of being shut up in an old desolate castle, all for nothing, and was continually fancying and prognosticating some very horrible calamity. An accident, that by chance happened, tended only to increase and confirm his fears: by some mistake the door was one night left open, and it happened that Michael had hung some venison, of a savoury odour, up in the hall. Now it seems the wolves, being attracted by this savory scent, applied their noses very forcibly to the crevice which was left between, insomuch that it presently pushed a little wider; the eager assailants readily took this hint, and exerted themselves with such alacrity, that in a short time it was thrown entirely back; and the friendly animals, galloping in in vast numbers, seized hold on the venison that attracted their attention, and, pulling it from the hook whereon it was hung, began scattering every thing they met with into confusion and disorder.

Not contented with this, they ascended the staircase, and came trampling and growling along the

ings, on each side of which were occupied apart-  
 ments. Edward, being the first who heard them,  
 it forth Michael to see what was the matter, and  
 quire the cause of all this confusion, uproar, and  
 armur; which order the squire, with a long face,  
 eyed, boding no good would arise for himself out  
 it; when, lo! the first thing that struck his sight  
 is a huge wolf, carrying in its mouth the very  
 nt which he had preserved with so much care, and  
 ng up in the hall, followed anon by a whole flock  
 other wolves, no less formidable than itself. Ter-  
 red and amazed, he ran as fast as his legs could  
 ry him into the room again, and closing the door,  
 d throwing himself on a seat, vented his terror in  
 exclamation of "Laud, sir, what shall we do!  
 ere be all the monsters of the world, I verily be-  
 ve, come up to attack us, and they are howling,  
 d ready to devour one." Edward, who supposed  
 squire meant ghosts, said, "So the spirits of the  
 d sea have come from their gloomy habitations,  
 order to combat with us! Verily, a formidable  
 ny to encounter; we shall surely be half over-  
 own and defeated." "Sir, sir, said the squire,  
 interrupting him, 'tis no ghosts that are down in  
 s passage, 'tis a parcel of four-legged monsters;  
 s a flock of wolves, I can assure ye. They have  
 ke in at the gate, and come up all the way here.  
 ad, I hope we shall not have them here this way  
 ten; I verily am certain that we shall be de-  
 ured. O what a plague that we ever came prancing

away from England, all, forsooth, for nothing ! I thought as how that this would be the way of it, when the volks told me how these horrible monsters came down in flocks, and that we should one day get into a hobble about it ; and now ye see it's come as I thought." " Wolves !" exclaimed Edward, astonished : and at the same time called out to the other knights, who in a short time were armed with their weapons ; when, sallying forth, they attacked the rapacious invaders, who had before this thrown every thing into complete disorder, whom they presently, after a furious combat, discomfited, drove through the hall, and out at the door by which they had entered ; which was then fastened securely, to prevent such interruptions for the future. This alarm, though not productive of any bad consequences, yet served to keep them on the watch ; so that after this they met with no more such terrible alarms.

The winter passed away, and the spring began to make its appearance ; the wolves retired to their retreats, and every thing began to shoot forth into verdure. As Sir Francis was walking in the forest with Anthony, he suddenly became depressed in spirits, and entreated Anthony to relate some amusing story to entertain him ; with which request he complied : and after preparing himself for the important business, considering a quarter of an hour, and repeating the word *humph* for about half-a-dozen times, thus began, after having previously informed

his hearers, that the name of the story he was going to relate was

*The History of Prince Sanballad.*

“AMONGST the numerous variety of mighty sultans who sat upon the throne of India, and swayed the sceptre of their ancestors with glory and renown, was one named Dabelrelcour, who wanted nothing to complete the theme of his happiness but a son, who might inherit his empire, and continue the glorious course of his race unto the remotest posterity. Not one of his eleven sultanas had yet presented him with the object of his wishes ; and all the daily petitions he made to the genius of his kingdom had hitherto been in vain. This single thing poisoned the happiness which he had been wont to assume and enjoy, and his life was embittered by the reflection, that in himself would end the race which had so long possessed the crown, and that he should have the misery of being the last of it : for the Sultan had this peculiarity, that whatever his ancestors had held in possession, it hurt him to his heart to give up.

At length, however, the genius of the empire appeared to him in a vision, and informed him, that his request would be complied with, for that every one of his sultanas would present him with what he so ardently desired. As soon therefore as he awoke, he began to offer up his thanks to the good genius,

and in a short time received the promised gratification. Grand rejoicings were celebrated on the occasion ; and nought but the sound of instruments of music, and loud rejoicings, were heard in the city of the Sultan.

Now it happened, that at this time his favourite sultana was at the palace of a certain vizier in the country; therefore, as that in the city was much crowded with mutes and attendants, which were hired to attend on the young Princes, the Sultan sent to desire she would stay there, until such time as things were more settled. Accordingly it was so; and her son, who was by the direction of the Sultan named Sanballad, remained likewise.

Time passed on, and he grew to be a fine youth. He had now attained his fourteenth year, and not one of the sons of the numerous emirs and vizers, with whom he was accustomed to associate, could rival him in dexterity of arms, and warlike accomplishments, nor be put in competition for vigour and skill. The most skilful of them had their greatest efforts, to attain even to a small degree of perfection like it, made entirely fruitless ; yet notwithstanding all this, Sanballad, not content, cared not for these acquirements, if he had not the opportunity to use and display them. The Sultan had, in the bustle and confusion necessarily attending on a court, entirely forgotten them. Moreover, a powerful monarch in the neighbourhood had, in conjunction with some of the neighbouring princes,

made an invasion on his territories ; and this contributed to efface it from his memory : for this monarch had come with a great and powerful army all on a sudden, and carried devastation and terror before them wherever they went ; so that the Sultan had but just time hastily to collect a few troops, before the invaders had penetrated to the very heart of the country. However, they at length met with the invaders, and, after a very terrible battle, completely discomfited them ; so that they were glad to submit to such terms as the victors thought proper to impose, in order to prevent such invasions for the future, to procure themselves a safe retreat back to their own country.

This was a great and terrible vexation to Sanballad, who thought it a most horrible thing to be restrained from exerting himself, and displaying his dexterity in arms in this engagement : and as it was seen in the more remote parts of the kingdom, that the monarch who had made the invasion, though he had consented to every humiliating condition that he should not any more do so, yet was plainly plotting and making schemes for some grand work with the other princes, with whom he had before associated ; he determined to set out, and go to the court of the Sultan, where, having continued some time, and performed some memorable exploits, he should discover who he was.

Having informed the vizer, with whom he had

lived, that he was going on a journey for a short time, he set out. He was mounted on a fine Arabian courser: by his side was a sabre, the hilt of which was of gold, and the sheath was composed of the same metal: on his back was a bow slung, and likewise a quiver of arrows: and thus equipped, he travelled on until he came to the side of a great forest. He attempted to enter it, but found it necessary to dismount from his horse, as it was impossible for him to go on with it; and tying it to a large tree, he went on. But the thickets scratched him in such a grievous manner, and annoyed him so abominably, that he found it absolutely impossible to keep on; and accordingly seated himself on a heap of stones which was piled up. Scarcely had he settled himself, when it gave way, and he was precipitated to the bottom with such violence, that he was stunned; and as soon as he recovered, he began to look around, and all on a sudden perceived a square copper trap-door, on which was a huge ring of the same metal. This he endeavoured to remove; and having exerted his strength for some time, he at length succeeded in removing it from its place; and looking down, he perceived a long flight of stairs, which was lost in the gloom and darkness below. His curiosity was much raised and excited by this, and getting down, he descended; and getting at length to the bottom, he perceived a glimmering light at the farther end of a long passage. Encouraged by this circum-

stance, he groped on, and, by feeling against the side, got to the end, and entered an apartment from whence the light proceeded. It was entirely empty ; on one side was a bath, and all round it was hung with great splendour and magnificence. He could not conceive why a dismal place under ground should be ornamented with so much lace.

At the opposite end from the one by which he had entered was a door ajar ; this he pushed open, and perceived within a damsel of uncommon beauty ; who no sooner beheld him, than, uttering a loud shriek, she exclaimed, " Depart, I conjure you, whoever thou art, and make thine escape, ere it be too late, and inevitable destruction befall both thou and myself ; as if thou dost not, it will certainly come so." " Depart !" exclaimed Sanballad ; " impossible. Do you suppose I shall depart, and leave you immured within the horrible prison in which thou now art ? Verily, I say, it shall not be." " Depart, I entreat you, said the damsel, with increased vehemence, nor wait one moment longer. My persecutor hath sworn, that whomsoever he shall find within forty miles of the plain around this desolate forest, he will sacrifice to his abominable vengeance. Moreover, it is necessary that thou shouldst be gone far beyond the limits of this distance which he hath prescribed for the free execution of his horrible anger, as the monster is very tenacious of scents, and can with small exertion tell if a mortal hath been on the road, though it hath passed by an



hour before. This night does he come hither ; and on such occasions he exerts his sense of smelling to the utmost ; therefore it is necessary that you should immediately depart."

Here Sir Francis and the Baron could no longer restrain themselves, and gave vent to their merriment in a loud laugh ; which was by some means construed into a disbelief of the history then about to be recited ; with which Anthony was highly offended, as though the knights gave no credit to one word of the wondrous tales which he was accustomed to relate, and considered them in their true light of fictions, invented merely for amusement. They had been accustomed to make the relator of them suppose they believed them as profoundly as himself, as had they not done this, he would not have troubled himself to relate them. This very unfortunate and unlucky venting of their laughter, as he was in the midst of what he considered a most sublime masterpiece of elegant accounts, had like to have occasioned some altercation ; nay, had not the two impolitic hearers readily apologized for the very heinous crime which they had been guilty of, it might have risen to a very serious height, and been productive of great evil. The relator, however, was soon satisfied, and his anger somewhat appeased. He would have continued the recital, had not a very violent shower of rain at that moment descended, and obliged them hastily to seek shelter by return-

ing to the castle. The relation of the remainder was therefore postponed until the following afternoon ; when, taking the road towards the avenue, and down to the sea-shore, Anthony thus proceeded from where he had left off.

“ I say, replied Sanballad, that I positively will not depart, until thou hast informed me who thou art, what is meant by thy persecutor, and to what purpose it is that thou art confined within this dungeon, as it may be called ; and likewise I am determined, if it is in the power of any mortal, to deliver you from the hands of this monster, whoever he is, whom thou dost call thy persecutor, but whom, I trust, will ere this time to-morrow be exterminated from among the number of the living.” “ Since then, replied the damsel, you are bent on staying, and must needs be the destruction of thyself, it will be expedient to pass the time between this and midnight in mirth and pleasantry. Therefore change thine attire in the adjoining apartment, while I set forth a repast, which may tend to enliven us, and pass away the time.” Sanballad readily complied with this ; and having changed his apparel for a very magnificent suit, which the lady had directed him to find, he returned to the inner room, where there was laid out a vast variety of choice viands ; of which, having seated themselves, they began to partake ; when the Prince, being extremely impatient to know the cause of the damsel's being confined in subterraneous

prisons, entreated her to inform him of the particulars of her history : which she did, and began thus :

“ You must know, in the first place, that I am by right Princess of Bengal, of which country my father was formerly sovereign. Now there was living at the court a certain eunuch, on whom my father was continually heaping honours and favours ; and at length, to complete the greatness of his power, entrusted the care of myself to him : but this vile eunuch, instead of faithfully fulfilling the trust which was reposed in him, contrived to admit the young Prince Zanguebar to a little closet which adjoined my apartment, from whence he might behold me without my knowledge. Now this Prince, it seems, fell very passionately in love with me ; and without farther delay, went and demanded me in marriage. My father, though somewhat offended at the very sudden manner in which the demand was made, yet concealed his resentment, from the fear of irritating the young Prince, as he doubted not, if that was the case, the king of Zanguebar would immediately declare war ; a thing which the country, having just then concluded a very long one, was not in a situation to bear ; and therefore he resolved to leave it entirely to me. Accordingly, a notification was sent, that this was to be the case : when, no sooner did I hear the purport of it, than I fell into a most violent wrath imaginable ; as I immediately knew the eunuch, and no one else, must have been the cause. In the rage that possessed

me, I sent an account at large of every thing to my father ; whose indignation on hearing it equalled my own. In the heat of his anger he hanged the eunuch, and ordered the Prince to depart immediately from his dominions ; an order which he, vowing revenge, obeyed. But it had been well if such hasty means had not been used ; for the king of Zanguebar, enraged at it to the greatest degree, came down with a large army one night, when all the inhabitants of the city were asleep, pulled down the gates, and penetrated as far as the palace of my father, before they were discovered. The pikemen who guarded the gate were quickly dispatched, and my sire, going forth to see what occasioned such an uncommon bustle, made prisoner. All this I learned from the grand vizer ; who, hearing what was going on, collected the imperial guards, and what other troops he could find, and hastened with them to the attack of the enemy ; but finding it too late to do any good, he left the men, and, coming by private ways to my palace, which was at the other end of the city, he told me of the danger we were in, and the necessity of making an immediate escape. Having collected ten attendants, we proceeded, by a certain subterraneous passage which led out beyond the town, out of reach of present danger, and then travelled on for many days in the most unfrequented roads, for fear of meeting or being overtaken by some of the men, which we doubted not the king of Zanguebar would dispatch in search of us.

At length, being out of fear of any such danger, we abated the quickness of our pace ; and one afternoon espied at a distance this forest. As it was insupportably hot, we approached it ; when, as we came up close, our ears were assailed with a horrible noise, so dreadful, that we all shrunk with horror : it was like unto a crushing of bones. Going a little farther, we perceived a horrible gigantic monster seated before a fire, composed of a whole tree ; by his side lay the carcasses of two sheep, which he had already devoured ; and on the fire was a whole ox roasting. There stood on the ground at a short distance two huge pitchers of wine, one of which he emptied just as we appeared, and the other remained full. We were concealed from his view by a hanging bush ; and the indignation of the grand vizer was so raised, that he ordered his men to fix their bows, and shoot at him. It was in vain I represented to him the folly and hazard attendant on such a measure ; that there were an hundred chances to one against their being able to kill him, as their arrows would be but as the prick of a pin to such a formidable giant ; and that if they did not, it would only bring him to the knowledge we were near, enrage him, and be the inevitable destruction of us all. It was in vain that I argued ; all this was to no effect. The vizer was resolutely fixed on his purpose ; and commanding his men to let fly their arrows, they did so. Unfortunately it happened, that at that moment the monster arose to take the ox from

off the fire, the arrows missed him; and, turning round in a fury, he came to the place where we were; and, seizing on the grand vizier by the middle, he lifted him in the air, and, whirling him round with great rapidity, hurled him to the ground: then drawing forth an enormous scimitar, which hung by his side, he whirled it round, and mowed down all the rest at a single stroke. After which he turned to me, who sat by, unable to move from terror, and enquired if I were not extremely gratified and rejoiced at having such a lover as himself, making at the same time most profound professions of love; but finding me averse to his odious proposals, he seized hold of me, and transported me in an instant to the entrance of this horrible place, into which he descended, and here left me. But previous to his going away, he informed me, that he should come and visit me twice in every ten days; and took the oath of which I have informed you; and likewise told me, that if at any time I wanted him; or was desirous of his company over and above those times, that if I pulled the silver cord, which thou dost see suspended from the roof, he would immediately be here. This is the account I have to give you, and the cause why I am confined in this prison.

As she spake, the cavern was all on a sudden shaken with violent quakings: hideous noises arose, and the roof trembled, as though it would fall in, and bury every thing beneath its ruins; when the

princess cried out aloud, "The monster is coming; prepare thyself to oppose him, for in ten minutes will he be here." No sooner had she uttered these words, than Sanballad recollected that he had left his arms in the adjoining room: wherefore he cried out in a fearful voice, "O princess, I have forgotten my weapons, and am utterly unable to oppose him: hast thou not some place wherein I may hide myself, and peradventure the monster will not perceive me." "Go then this instant, cried the princess, and hide thyself beneath the coverings of the sofa."

Sanballad did as he was desired, and, squeezing himself underneath the seat, awaited with fear and trembling the result of what would ensue. In a short time the gigantic monster descended, and thus addressed the princess, in a voice which was re-echoed in the subterraneous apartments, "What is it that thou hast done, thou miserable being? On the road hither did I perceive a horse fastened unto a tree, and likewise have I smelled a scent, which doth portend some mortal hath been near; and now I have arrived here, it doth increase. Thou hast surely admitted some lover: if thou hast, woe be unto thee. Soho! what have we here! Here is something sticking out from beneath this seat. What is it, I say!" As he said this, he seized hold on the feet of Sanballad, which the prince had unfortunately neglected to draw beneath the covering which concealed him, and began pulling them with great vengeance, so that he was forced to lay hold

on the wall to prevent his being drawn forth : and at length, the giant, finding his endeavours fruitless, desisted ; and began to enquire what it was which had made such opposition, as to resist his strongest attempts ; threatening, if it was any thing which concerned the lover, which he insisted had been thither, that he would destroy them both. At length, however, after staying three hours, he departed, and Sanballad came forth from his concealment.

The time passed away ; and the two following days, with part of the third, were spent in pleasantry and merriment ; when by accident the conversation turned on the monster ; and the prince enquired, as he had not been able to see him from the situation in which he was concealed, what sort of a personage he was : to which the princess replied, that his visage was of a hideous black ; that by his side he wore a scimitar of horrible size, and on him were various sorts of arms. “ And is this all that is terrible about him ! exclaimed Sanballad : verily this moment will I pull the silver cord, and oppose him in combat.” So saying, he arose to do as he had said, when he was stopped by the princess, who entreated him not to be so rash : but he was not in a mood to listen to her entreaties, and was resolutely bent on performing what he had in view ; and seizing on the cord, he pulled it with such violence, that it snapped in two in a moment. The cavern was rent with a most terrible shaking, the



princess turned pale with affright, and Sanballad was seized with terror. "Fly this moment, cried the former, and stay not an instant, when your life may depend on it." He did as he was desired; and, hastening through the passage, ascended the stairs, and, making his way through the wood, found his steed as he had left it; when, getting on it, he set off as fast as it could go.

But scarcely had he gone twenty yards, when he heard some one behind him. The monster had a few minutes after his departure entered the cavern, and exclaimed, "What dost thou want, vile mortal? This moment was I in an assembly of the genii, when I heard the talisman I had given thee calling aloud unto me, and straightway I hastened to see the cause. Say therefore now, what is it thou dost want?" But the princess was so affrighted, that she could not say a word. And after some time, the monster began again, "O thou abominable being, thou hast performed some heinous offence. Know that I have perceived a mortal which must be thy lover, as I came hither, but in my haste I suffered him to pass on: this moment, therefore, will I go in pursuit of him." So saying, he seized the princess, and, going swiftly after Sanballad, overtook him beyond the forest. On looking round, the prince was much astonished to behold this sight; and, turning his horse, prepared himself for combat. The monster, having come up nearly close, set the princess down, and ex-

claimed, "Stand by, I say, thou being, while I destroy this abominable lover of thine." And then snatching up a spear, which was slung on his back, he raised it over his head, and prepared to discharge it. Besides this, he had by his side an enormous scimitar, and likewise a huge, massive, and ponderous club, covered with iron knots and spikes.

Thus were the two combatants opposed ; a huge and horrific giant, to a youth, who had scarce attained his full portion of strength. The monster having taken his aim with great exactness, discharged his spear at Sanballad ; but the prince, watching the moment, nimbly spurred his horse out of the way, and, missing him, it struck and felled a young tree, that grew by, to the ground. Enraged at this, he drew his club from his girdle, and, raising it in the air, aimed a furious stroke at the prince ; but he evaded it in the same way : and then taking advantage of the moment, when, fatigued with his exertions, he was somewhat staggered, he seized the club with both hands, and, making a vigorous effort, wrested it from the hands of the giant ; who, mad with being thus foiled in his endeavours, drew his scimitar as his last resource ; and uplifting it with a furious aspect, he let it fall with its whole weight on what he supposed was the prince. But no sooner did Sanballad perceive it descending, than he was gone ; the scimitar fell void of any effect, and dragged the monster, who was completely wearied after his fruitless endeavours, along with it.

Sanballad sprang forward, and, leaping on him, drew his sabre, and severed his head from his body. Then turning to the princess, who stood petrified with fear, beholding the combat, he endeavoured to drive away her terror; in which he soon succeeded; and then getting on his horse, they journeyed on until near sun-set, when they retired to a grove by the way side; and, having seated themselves, begun to converse: when their attention was roused by the noise and clamour occasioned by two birds, which were perched on a tree above, and apparently contending for a small red substance which lay on the bough between them. They were fighting with a most deadly animosity, and made the air resound with their cries. At length one of them struck the other a furious blow with its bill on the head, which laid it dead; and then erecting its neck and tail, uttering loud screams, and fluttering about in triumph, it gave vent to its pleasure. But at this moment the substance, which had been the object of contention, fell to the ground. Sanballad sprang forward to seize it, and had already approached within a yard, when the bird, perceiving his intention, darted down, and, snatching it up, flew away to another tree. He followed it, climbed the tree, and stretched forth his hand to take it, but it evaded him, and flew off to a considerable distance. He still, however, went after it, and was served in the same manner, till at length he was out of sight of the princess; when, soaring in the air, it went out

of view, leaving him in wonder and astonishment.

As it was in vain to try and find his way back through the various turnings and windings which he had passed, he resolved to continue his rout, in hopes of meeting with some town or village, in which he might find shelter. Accordingly, with this resolution, he went on; but he had not proceeded far, when he heard a terrible voice calling to him from behind, which said, "Stop, thou presumptuous mortal, and wait until I have slain thee, and vented my wrath!" when, turning round, he beheld a genius coming after him, hideous and terrible to behold, so that he was seized with a violent fear, and trembled to a great degree. "Wherefore?" in a tremulous voice, he cried out: "what is it, O mighty genius, that I have done, to excite thy wrath and vengeance? I know not what I have done, which should give you offence." "Thou hast slain my son, replied the genius: wherefore I must kill thee in return." "I slain thy son! cried Sanballad; thou must surely be mistaken. I know not what thou dost mean." "Why, didst thou not, said the genius, this day overcome in combat a mighty giant, and kill him?" "Most assuredly, said the prince, have I done this; but I knew not at the time that I had overcome the son of the genius. I pray thee, kill me not, lest thou have cause to repent, as did the vizer, who hanged himself in despair." And what, said the genius, did this vizer, to have

cause to hang himself? Tell me, I say, this moment, and delay not." "Dost thou think then, said Sanballad, that I am in a humour to relate you tales, when thou art about to kill me? No, verily, I will not, unless thou dost promise not to kill me, as was thy intention." "I do solemnly promise thee, said the genius, that if thou wilt relate it, I will be satisfied with transforming thee into another shape." Wherefore, as the prince knew he could not obtain better terms than these from the genius, and might by persisting in his endeavours only fail of procuring so good, he thus began the history of the vizer, who hanged himself in despair.

"There was once a certain vizer, whose sovereign, loving indolence and ease, entrusted to him the chief care of his kingdom. Now it happened, that one evening, as they were conversing together, it was proposed by the vizer, that he should procure a female slave, whose beauty should excel that of any other in the possession of the king. Accordingly, a proclamation was made throughout the city to all the merchants who dealt in slaves, and every one was eager to bring the most beautiful female in his possession. At length the vizer found one to his taste, and took her unto his own house, until such a time as she should have recovered her full vigour, and be fit to present unto his sovereign, as the merchant, of whom he had procured her, was of a remote and distant country, and had but just now arrived at the city. Now this vizer had a son, who unfortu-

nately happened to pass by the slave as she entered the door of the house, and she, it seems, fell in love with him; so that, relying on her own attractions, she declared it to him without delay. But he rejected it with anger; nevertheless, he did not inform any one of it; and she, enraged at this refusal, resolved to revenge herself on him. Accordingly, when the vizer came home, she thus addressed him: "My lord, I have something which is of importance to communicate; listen, therefore, I beg of you; to what I have to relate. Thy son has dared to come in, and make a profession of love to me; nor would he go away, until he feared lest you should come and discover him with me: therefore did I think it expedient and advisable to inform you of it; that a stop might be put to such dangerous proceedings, lest evil might arise therefrom."

No sooner did the vizer hear this tale which the slave had invented, and which, putting on an air of concern, she related in a doleful manner, than he fell into a most violent rage, which was raised in a short time to such a degree, that he exclaimed; "What hath this abominable young man dared to disobey the injunctions which I gave him, not to go near to this slave, as it was the king's! This moment will I go in search of him, and punish him for his disobedience." As he said this, he arose, and straightway went to search for him. After a short time, he perceived him, and in his fury drew forth a dagger, and,

rushing on him, stabbed him with such violence, that he fell down at his feet.

No sooner had he done this, than he repented of his haste, and bitterly lamented that he had done so. At that moment his wife came forth, and began reproaching him with great vehemence. "What is it that thou hast done, cried she, thou miserable vizer! Thou hast slain thy son for nought. By a certain talisman which is in my possession have I discovered what thou hast done this for; and likewise have I discovered, that all the slave did tell thee was entirely false, O thou miserable vizer!"

Then the vizer was nearly mad with vexation and grief, and went to the palace of his sovereign, hoping there, by the commendations he should receive for his zeal, to drive away the thoughts which tormented him. But when he came there, to his great disappointment, instead of the applause and praise he expected, on relating his conduct, the King began to reproach him very bitterly. "Wherefore didst thou kill the young man, cried he, even had he been guilty of what thou didst suppose? But now, lo! now he hath done nothing, miserable vizer that thou art." The vizer, therefore, disappointed in his last resource, departed in a frenzy from the palace; and, going straightway without the walls of the city, hanged himself in despair on a tree." And this, O genius, is the history of the vizer, which you desired to hear. So now I have per-

formed my work, I hope thou wilt not refuse to do as thou hast promised. Dost thou think then, cried the genius, that I intend to break my promise? No, thou vile being; leave, I say, this moment thy present shape, and take that of a yellow bird, with red wings and tail. No sooner had the genius spoken these words, than Sanballad found himself in the shape of a bird; and, ere he could recover from the surprise into which it threw him, he was left alone.

Rising therefore in the air, he soon left the place far behind him, and presently alighted in the environs of a great city. Perching himself therefore on a bush, he insensibly became overcome with the powers of sleep: but presently he was awakened by a rude and violent pull; when, looking around, he perceived himself in the grasp of a man, who was busily employed in disengaging him from a large net, in which a variety of other birds were likewise entangled, and struggled hard, but in vain, to free themselves from the perplexing twines: a crafty bird-catcher had perceived him while asleep, and, taking advantage of that time, spread his snares securely over him. Delighted with his prize, the bird-catcher, calculating the profits which he should gain, placed Sanballad in the room with his other numerous prisoners, and there hung him up in a spacious iron cage. In this there was a nightingale and tomtit; and by the cage side there hung a linnet, and one with a blackbird in it.

Here did Sanballad pass the time tediously away,



and often wished he had never left the palace of the vizer. He now had nothing but the dismal prospect of passing his life in the shape of a bird ; for although the genius had deprived him of his proper form, yet he still retained his wonted sense as a man in full perfection. At length, one morning, as he sat revolving his fate in a kind of fixed stupor, he was aroused on a sudden by the din of bustle and confusion, and in a short time the bird-catcher appeared, shewing into the apartment a lady, who from the diadem on her head he immediately knew was the queen of the country. Now this queen was well acquainted with all the secrets of magic, and was a profound studier of that art. She therefore immediately knew that Sanballad was there in the shape of a bird ; and after traversing the whole room, she enquired the price of that bird, meaning him ; to which the bird-catcher replied, he could not part with it under pieces of gold. This demand being satisfied, she took some water, and, taking forth Sanballad from the cage, threw it on him, and then pronouncing certain magical words, and ordering him to take his proper form, she had no sooner done so, than he found himself in his own shape, to the great amazement of the bird-catcher, who stood by, and who could scarcely believe his eyes.

The queen then conducted Sanballad, who rode on horseback by her side, to the palace, where he continued all day ; and when at night he would have

gone away to some public building, and slept, she entreated him to stay, and thus addressed him ; " I pray thee, O prince, go not away, and make me miserable, but stay all night, else shall I be very unhappy : go not, therefore, lest evil befall thee, to make me miserable." Yet Sanballad, notwithstanding her earnest entreaties, would not consent ; and thus did argue with her : " Thy subjects, O queen, may spread evil and injurious rumours and reports, and will say one to another, Lo ! our sovereign hath one day transformed a bird into a prince, and the same night hath she kept him in the palace to sleep. It may likewise give rise to evil consequences ; therefore will it be advisable for me now to depart." But the queen, instead of listening to his reasoning, only redoubled her importunities ; so that Sanballad was forced to take advantage of the moment when she was not looking, to steal away unobserved, and go to some public building.

No sooner did the queen perceive that he had got away unperceived by her, than she fell into a most violent rage. Her liking for him was in a moment changed into a most inveterate hatred, and she vowed to revenge herself on him the very next time he should appear before her. With this resolution she prepared her enchantments against the time, and then, but not till then, retired to repose.

On the following morning Sanballad arose, and supposing the anger of the queen, which he doubted at first, would be somewhat raised, was by that time

fully appeased, went towards the palace : but scarcely had he got to the middle of the street, when he was accosted by a certain sage magician, who thus addressed him ; “ If I am not mistaken, thou art the young man whom our sovereign yesterday transformed from the shape of a bird ! ” Sanballad replied that he was. And the magician thus proceeded : “ Trust not, O youth, to her appearance of love, nor go any more to her palace, but rather get immediately on board some vessel, which may convey you far away from this place ; for know, that by my enchantments have I discovered that she is in a very violent wrath at thy disobedience of her desires, and will punish thee with some terrible evil. Go not, therefore, lest a horrible calamity befall thee, and thou repent when it is too late.” But Sanballad, who imagined not that her wrath had been so much excited, listened not to this caution, supposing that the magician might from envy have invented this tale, in order to throw him from the favour of the queen ; and therefore went on.

When he got to the palace, the queen received him with great courtesy, in order the more to make it sudden and unexpected, and conceal with this appearance her real intentions. For some time, therefore, did she converse, as though her resentment was entirely obliterated, and every way the same as on the day before. Then all on a sudden, starting up, she exclaimed, “ Thou presumptuous wretch, to dare to oppose my desires ! ” and then uttering

some certain magical words, she added, "Leave, I say, this moment, thine own form once more, and take the shape of an ape." No sooner had she uttered these words, than the prince once more found himself transformed; and the queen, having done this, called one of her damsels, and desired her to take him away, and destroy him. But the damsel, it seems, suspected an item of the matter, and resolved within herself, instead of obeying her orders, to carry it to the same magician who had spoken to Sanballad, and see if it was really the prince, as she had a strong suspicion. Accordingly she went, and the magician transformed him again into his own shape. He then without delay went on board a ship, and departed immediately from the country.

For ten days did he sail on without any kind of misfortune; but on the eleventh, a mighty tempest arose, hideous clouds obscured the sky, and the winds raged with horrible violence. The mariners were seized with affright, and stood like statues motionless with terror, and deprived of all power. The vessel, unguided by any thing but the waves, was carried upon a sandy bank, and there stuck fast. The storm abated, and they were left on dry ground; when no sooner did the captain perceive where they were, than he began to exclaim aloud, "Miserable beings that we are! we are cast on a shore, where we shall meet with inevitable destruction, and be destroyed by savages! Miserable beings! And then began to groan aloud in such a manner, that all the

people in the ship were called together with the noise, and came running to enquire the cause. But for some time he answered only by groans ; and at length Sanballad, who stood by, growing impatient, exclaimed, " What is it that thou dost mean, thou man, by saying we shall be devoured by savages ! Tell us, I say, this moment, what thou dost mean !" At last the captain, having vented his groans as long as he pleased, exclaimed, " Dost thou not then know that this island is inhabited by certain savages, who destroy every one that is cast on their shore, and that they will inevitably destroy every one of us !" As he spoke, the savages made their appearance, and, running swiftly to the shore, leaped into the sea, and surrounded the vessel ; then climbing up the sides, they seized on the crew of the ship, and every one else, and carried them up the country to a horrible gloomy place, where the most vigorous of them were chosen as slaves to the king of the savages ; and Sanballad, who owing to his youth was overlooked, with the rest, conducted to a hideous cavern, into which they were cast.

It was a long time ere Sanballad had recovered his strength sufficiently to get up ; and when he did, the horrible stench which assailed him from all quarters at once nearly suffocated him. His companions had been all destroyed in the fall from the mouth of the cavern, which was a horrible height from the bottom ; and the savages it seems were in the habit of throwing all the prisoners that fell

into their hands, which they did not consider vigorous enough to employ for slaves, into this cave. Sankallad endeavoured to crawl along, and find his way to the further end of the cavern; but it was so impenetrably dark, and the cavern was so spacious, that, after toiling for some time in vain, he was forced to continue where he was, without the least hope of escape, or any thing to cheer him but a glimmering light at a vast distance at one end. As he watched this light with an anxious eye, it was presently entirely darkened, and then again in a moment was open. He then heard something approach with a loud rattling; and presently a sonorous snort convinced him that some living being was near. He advanced a few paces, and by the faint gleam of light perceived a hideous monster of an animal coming towards him; but the sight of a living being, and, what was still more, the feeble hope of escape which presented itself, made it in his eyes delightful, however hideous the object might be; and springing forward, he caught hold of the monster's tail, and pulled it with such a violent jerk, that the monster, being affrighted with so sudden and unexpected a salute, uttered a loud roar, and set off at full gallop towards the end of the cavern, where the light was; where it soon arrived; and, dragging Sankallad after it, entered a short narrow passage, which ended in some abrupt steps, formed by nature. But in getting up these, he was forced to disengage himself; and the monster hav-

ing passed through, he followed, and found himself on the side of a mountain.

But he now had a danger to encounter, which he had not thought of : the monster, who had been so instrumental in his escape, perceiving him, pursued him in order to devour him ; so that to prevent being devoured, he was forced to run until he reached the sea-shore ; and there a wood fortunately presented itself to view, in one of the trees of which he took refuge from his pursuer, who, after a short time, went away. But it was only to give place to another enemy still more formidable, and from whom the boughs of the tree could not protect him : this was a serpent of great magnitude, who, winding up the trunk of the tree whereon he sat, left him no other resource than to cling to the furthestmost branches, which were too fragile to support the serpent. This he did, and at length the formidable enemy went away. He then descended ; and at that moment a vessel appeared in sight, which went past the island ; and taking advantage of this, he endeavoured to make the people in it perceive him. Fortunately he succeeded, and was to his great joy taken on board the vessel, which was going to a port in the empire of the sultan ; and at length it arrived there.

Sanballad went on shore ; and, going to the house of a barber there, found on enquiring that the sultan's dominions were at that time invaded by the forces of the king, who had formerly come to attack

them, that he had formed a confederacy with no less than eleven other princes, and the grand vizier Hassan, who had gone to oppose them with his army, had been totally defeated; and that in consequence of this, the whole army and country was in the greatest consternation, and the sultan had gone out with what troops he could collect to oppose the enemy, who were advancing by rapid strides towards the capital. Sanballad therefore hastened to levy troops; and having armed a troop of 300 horsemen, set out towards the city. As he drew near on the ninth day, his ears were struck with a loud clangour, and the clashing of arms resounded throughout the air. He rode on at the head of his troops with redoubled speed, and beheld the two armies, that of the sultan and the invaders, engaged in close combat. The sultan's men were every way flying in disorder, the line of the imperial guard was broken, and the sultan himself on the point of being taken, as he was already completely surrounded. No sooner did the prince perceive this, than he redoubled his speed; and, rushing forward to the assistance of the sultan, changed in a moment the fortune of the day. The sultan's troops rallied, and turned upon their enemies, who were flying after them in confusion, and drove them back; the sultan himself was rescued; and in a moment every thing was changed to the very opposite extreme. Having gained a complete victory, the prince returned with his father to the palace in the city, where to his great surprise he



found the princess of Bengal ; who, after his leaving her, had proceeded by herself to the city, where she had related the wondrous story of her delivery. Five days after, therefore, his nuptials were celebrated with great pomp and magnificence, and the magician, to whom Sanballad owed his transformation into his own shape, was immediately sent for, and raised to a high dignity in the state, as a reward for his services."

Thus did Anthony conclude his tale, and then cast a look around at his audience, in order to discover by their countenances if their approbation was raised : when having satisfied himself, with the assurance which his eager hopes suggested, that it was so, he was contented. But it now beginning to grow dusk, Sir Francis and the Baron thought it advisable that they should return homeward, lest being benighted in the forest, they might lose their way in the mazes and windings of the wood ; a thing which, when immersed in darkness, was not unlikely, but very far the contrary. Accordingly homeward they bent their steps, and, after some time, entered the court in front of the castle ; which bore quite a different appearance from what it had on their first arrival : instead of being covered with brushwood and long grass, as it was then, all these disgraceful marks had, through the exertions of the knights, with their squires, been cleared away and destroyed ; and their place was supplied by a green

hedge, which went all round, and formed a communication between some small statues, which stood at intervals in the court. In the midst stood a large plant of myrtle, which branched out with great vigour and beauty. The trees, instead of being deserted by the greater part of their leaves, were shooting out afresh. The garden behind the castle, which had been six months previous a perfect desert, with nought but underwood, weeds, and dead stumps, was now cleared of these, and plentifully stocked with trees and flowers of different sorts and hues, which just then shot forth their blossom in great profusion; and the castle, without losing its venerable look, had got rid of the gloomy cast which had at first enveloped it.

Crossing the court, they entered the hall, and were at the entrance met by Michael, who was coming in haste to inform them, that he had seen a ghost in the chapel; and that therefore it would be advisable for the doors which led there to be speedily fastened, in order to prevent it from penetrating into the inhabited parts. No sooner therefore did he perceive them, which was not until they were nearly close to him, than he exclaimed, in a loud and sonorous voice, "Why, sirs, I have been a searching and looking I know not how long to find ye: the ghost is walking about in the aisle of the chapel, and has been there this hour or more, and here was I looking and spying in every corner, thinking as how it might take it into its head to come and walk

about in the castle." "Hold thy peace, thou foolish varlet," cried Sir Francis, "how long wilt thou torment thyself, and everyone about thee, with thine idle fears, and when cease to utter such absurd extravagancies!" "Ah, sir," cried Michael, "ye did not to be angered, nor fly up in a wrath, I can assure ye, that ye did not; for verily as sure as I am a living mortal, and as sure as I stand here, have there been a spirit walking in the chapel. I saw it with mine own eyes, and saw enough to make me not over-desirous to behold it again. So I tell ye, ye did not bristle up into a rage, and snap one's head off;" "But," said the Baron, "here have you been haranguing all this time, and have not yet informed us of the nature of this mighty ghost, or in what manner it appeared." "Laud, sir," cried the squire, "how could a body tell that ye wanted to know that, when ye made such a fuss, as was enough to confound one's senses. I saw it as I was crossing the north aisle, and the ghost was all in white in the middle one, and it ran across in a minute, and was out of sight, leaving me half dead, and hardly able to crawl out." Thus did the squire, who still trembled, and was pale with the fright, account for the ghost: and often thus did he terrify himself with such fears, and was the only one of the household who heartily wished themselves away from the castle: for Margaret, who had at first been under the influence of such fears as well as himself, had, by great labour and difficulty, at length contrived to overcome them

in such a degree, that it required something extraordinary to raise them ; nor would the creaking of a door, or the noise of the wind howling through the battlements, which was alone sufficient to overset the courage of the squire, have that effect. He was continually getting laughed at and ridiculed ; and when in one of his fits of terror, he would have vented his fright in one of those vehement harangues, which he so much delighted in, and which eased him so considerably, when in a perturbation of spirits ; whichever way the unfortunate squire turned for this purpose, he was sure to get laughed at and huffed, two things to which he had an insurmountable dread, horror, and aversion. He therefore durst not complain, but, doing better, always kept silence.

## CHAPTER IV.

**I**N this manner did time pass on; summer was gone, and winter again came; which in its turn gave place to spring. It was in the middle of the second spring that the household of Sir Francis and the Baron had inhabited the castle, that an event happened, which occupied the attention of the whole company. Edward, with the other two knights, had for three days past been out on a hunting excursion, from which they had returned late in the evening much fatigued; so that as soon as it was convenient, the knight retired to his apartment, where, throwing himself on his couch, he fell asleep, leaving Michael to adjust some hunting weapons, which they had taken with them in their hunting tour. But scarcely had he slept half an hour, when he was awakened by a loud noise, as if something had fallen with a great crash, which noise was likewise accompanied by a loud roar. Starting up, he looked around him, supposing that some distant part of the building might have given way, or something even more terrible had happened; when, lo! what was his surprise, on perceiving that the cause of all this noise was no other than Michael,

who was extended on the floor at full length, and trembling like an aspen leaf, as if his life was that moment to be taken away. Going up to him; therefore, he shook him, and enquired the cause : to which, after some time, he trembling replied, " I have seen—I have seen—I have seen a ghost !" " Plague on your ghosts, cried Edward, disturbing me in the midst of my sleep ; you look, forsooth, like a ghost yourself, you pale-faced squire. But, after all, whither did this mighty ghost, which so frightened you, go, and what kind of a spirit was it ? Verily I have a desire to hear." " Why it walked—it walked—" said Michael, as at the same time he rose from the ground ; and as he was going to proceed, a sudden noise, which seemed to proceed from the chapel, made him relapse into his former state, and, speechless with terror, he stood fixed, and immovable as a statue.

At length Edward broke silence, by exclaiming, " And whither did it walk, man ! Am I to wait here until midnight for thy answer !" " Laud, sir, cried Michael, as soon as he could speak, dont be in such a bustle and flurry ; do give one time to breathe, and I will tell you all about it in time. Why it was a thin form, all in white, and it walked across the court, and went into the forest ; on one side it carried a flaming torch, and looked very horrible." " And so, this, said Edward, is what hath terrified you, so that you had like to have lost your senses !

Well done, O thou abominable varlet ! And so I am to be called up, roused, and awakened out of my sleep, to listen to your idle fears, and all because you are frightened with the imagination of ghosts, spirits, and spectres, and choose to terrify yourself with fancying you have seen these phantoms. No, varlet, know that I am not to be always troubled with thy idle fears, or for ever bored with the repetition of thy fancies and vagaries, nor yet disturbed in the middle of my sleep, to behold thee extended on the floor, trembling and shaking, anon, like a feather tied with a twine in the wind ; so you need not suppose I do, varlet ; for if thou dost, thou art widely mistaken." "Laud, I hope ye do not call me varlet, sir," said the squire, who immediately took up what he imagined to be an affront on his dignity. "I hope ye do not call me varlet ; I am sure ye have no reason, no, nor yet to be angered, and fly in a rage. I be no varlet, I can assure ye ; so ye did not call me so ; and I could have sworn that I saw the self-same spirit cross the yard, as was in the chapel a year ago, for aught folks can say to the contrary." By the time the offended squire had finished this speech, Edward was recovered from the vexation into which the being aroused from his sleep had at first thrown him, and somewhat repented of having been so hasty in his expressions of anger ; so that having satisfied Michael with the assurance that he had unintentionally called him var-

let, the knight once more retired to rest ; and his squire, having finished the employment he was about, followed his example.

On the following morning, at sun-rise, Edward, having, completely recovered from the fatigues he had undergone on the three preceding days in a night's repose, arose, and descended to the sitting room ; where, finding the rest of the party not yet descended from their apartments, he went forth with the intention of walking until they were risen. Having entered the forest, he crossed a little bridge, which went over a small rivulet, which, running on the bed of stones beneath, lost itself in various windings among the trees. From thence he ascended a rising hill, on the top of which was situated a stone bench, which, overlooking the surrounding trees, commanded an extensive view of the ocean on one side, and on the other looked towards the country, diversified with numberless meadows, and fertile fields. On this bench he seated himself, and began to indulge in reflections on the past, when he was suddenly aroused by the sound of harmony ; a lute, accompanied by a female voice, formed a most delightful melody, and performed an air, the words of which he could not understand, but the sound struck his ear as enchanting. He started up in astonishment, and listened for a moment ; the tones ceased. He rushed forwards, and penetrated through the thickets, at the risk of being blinded with the thorns and briars ; then stopped, and again



listened : on a sudden the sounds again rose ; and he again started up, and pursued his course, from whence they seemed to come ; but in a moment they died away, and he fancied he beheld a figure in white run swiftly through the trees from him. He called aloud, but in vain ; and as there were now no hopes of his being able to follow whatever it might be, at present, he returned with slow pace to the castle ; and on his way thither a thought struck him, that the fears of Michael might be well founded, as this might possibly be the same form which he had seen, and in his imagination made to be a ghost, which had so frightened him.

At breakfast he communicated this suspicion to Sir Francis and the Baron, who as well as all the rest perfectly agreed with him in opinion, that the terrors of the squire had some cause, but that if it was so, the being who occasioned them, instead of a spirit, was a mortal ; and a consultation was held as to what should be done ; which ended in the determination, that the knight should sit up and watch, in order to ascertain if it were so ; and to drive away the fears which Michael, relating what he had seen, might raise amongst the household ; it was made known, and orders given to prepare a small apartment which overlooked the court for the purpose. This precaution proved very necessary, as the squire had already related at large the account, and succeeded in spreading the fear which possessed himself to the whole household, except

Oswald and Mary. Margaret affirmed she had likewise seen a figure; and the Baron's sons' squire declared they had more than once heard strange voices; but all this was quickly put a stop to, as soon as the knight's intentions were known. Michael gloried in the thought, that his fears were supposed to have a foundation; and every one was employed in preparing the apartment, in which the important night was to be passed by Edward, when it was to be discovered whether or no the appearance which the squire had seen, if there was any, was a supernatural spirit, or a living being.

At the end of three days it was got ready, and at night, after all the rest of the household were in bed, he repaired thither. A fire had been previously lighted, as the weather was yet cold, and a basket with some wine, wood, and refreshments, placed on the hearth. Taking therefore some of the latter, he drew his chair near the fire, and contemplated the room in which he was. It had formerly served as a kind of library, or study, to the owners of the castle; the greater part of three sides were covered with shelves, filled with volumes and manuscripts, and the other part hung with tapestry, which descended in tattered fragments from the walls, and shook ever and anon with the gusts of wind, which came in tolerable quantities through the crannies, holes, and crevices in the walls. To pass away the time, he got up, and, taking a book from the shelf, began to endeavour to make out the mouldy cha-

acters which were written therein; but it was dull amusement to read in such a volume; at every word he was obliged to go over the letters nearly twenty times before he could make them out, and in many places they were entirely defaced; so that after he had read half-a-dozen leaves, finding he should be more inclined to go to sleep if he continued, than to stay awake, he placed the book on the shelf, from whence he had taken it, and sat with his eyes fixed on the fire, doing nothing. At every slight noise he ran to the window to see the cause, and whether it was occasioned by the object he was on the watch for. Then he would, to make the tedious time appear less heavy, walk backwards and forwards in the room; and, entering a closet that was on one side, rummage the contents of an immense oaken cabinet, which was in it, in order to find amusement; but it was in vain he used his utmost endeavours to divert himself, and occupy his attention.

As he sat listening to every creaking of the doors, and beholding the cheerful blaze before him, his eyes insensibly closed, and he fell asleep. He continued in an uninterrupted repose for near two hours, when, awaking, he thought he heard in reality the sound of footsteps. Listening for a moment, he became convinced of it, and eagerly running to the window, he beheld the form which occasioned so much terror cross the court directly beneath. It was apparently the same he had seen in the forest,

and carried in its hand a lighted torch. He would fain have called out, but he was seized with a terror, that deprived him of all power of utterance: it was a sensation of an indescribable nature, which as it made him wish to make it known that he was there, at the same time prevented and deprived him of the power of doing it. Thus was the grand object of the watching destroyed; and while he stood in this manner deprived of speech, the figure, going in amongst the trees on one side of the court, disappeared.

Having recovered from his surprise, he resolved to go round to the chapel, as Michael had affirmed he had seen it there once, and it might chance in its course to go round thither. So taking up his light, and drawing his sword, he entered the long stone passage, which led from the library to the chapel. As he went, the pavement echoed with his footsteps; the vapours and damp which collected around the lamp caused it to burn with a dull and faint aspect, and, taking from it one half of its brightness, caused, by the feeble glare it threw around, and just giving a semblance of light, the passage to look if possible more gloomy and hideous than it in reality was. When he got to the end, his progress was obstructed by a door, which in his haste he had forgotten. This door was securely fastened with an iron bolt, of a prodigious size and weight, which was rusty and stiff; and it was not until he had several times essayed with all his might to pull it from the socket,

that it yielded to his endeavours, and came back. This obstacle being at length removed, he entered the chapel, and, going up the aisle, looked around ; but every thing appeared still and quiet ; not even the noise of the numerous birds, who nightly took up their residence in the roof, was to be heard ; they as well as every thing else were silent. As he went, he waved the light round in order to see the greater distance, but could perceive nothing, though indeed the light did not allow him to distinguish above two or three yards, so dim was it.

Having gone all round the chapel, and satisfied himself in his mind that the person he had beheld, whoever it was, did not intend to visit the place that night, or had already been, he was just crossing over in order to go back to the library by the way he came, when some one came bouncing out on one side, knocked the sword and candle out of his hands, nearly threw him down with the shock, and then running swiftly up the aisle, was out of sight in an instant. No sooner was Edward recovered from the surprise which this violent assault occasioned, than, snatching up his light and weapon again, he ran with all his speed after the assailant, calling out aloud to him at the same time to stop. He ran and called for some time, but in vain, and received no answer ; till at length, turning the corner of the chapel, the rays of light fell on a man, who was running with equal speed as himself, but who, on perceiving himself discovered, faced about, put him-

self in an attitude of defence, drew his sword, and flourishing it over his head in the air, while at the same time he put his shield before him, cried out aloud, " Stop, stop, thou, whoever thou art, and be not so rash as to come farther, lest thou fall beneath the weight of my sword, and repent when it is too late." " Dost thou think then, cried Edward, that I fear thee, or heed thy threats and menaces ! No, thou man, thou art widely mistaken. I am armed as well as thyself, and thou shalt soon feel the weight of mine arm, and see that I am no contemptible enemy."

As he spake this, the knight sprang forward, and attacked him with great fury. The two combatants opposed each other with ungovernable fury. The combat was long and uncertain, and lasted for the space of half an hour, without any great advantage on either side : but at length the superior dexterity and skill of Edward got the better of the more sturdy and robust strength of the man ; he wounded his adversary in the right arm with great force, disarmed him, and then throwing him on the ground, he put the point of his sword to his throat, and demanded who he was, and for what purpose he came there ; saying at the same time, that if he did not instantly discover it, he would immediately kill him. " Laud, sir, dont murder a body, cried the man, and I will tell you all about it ; dont murder one, sir, that be not the office of valiant knights." " Tell me then, said Edward, this moment, who you are, or verily it will be your last."

"Egad, sir knight, do give a body time to breathe; said the man; ye have mauled me so confoundedly, that I be quite out of breath; and so if ye wont let me stay a minute, ye must kill me." "Well then, said Edward, you may stay until you have recovered your breath; but mind, if you stay one instant longer than is necessary, that same instant will I kill you."

After staying for about a quarter of an hour, the man began. "Why, sir, you must know, in the first place, that I have been a long journey; and being benighted by the side of this forest, I had the courage to come to this chapel, where I, thinking the castle was uninhabited, thought I would pass the night; but had not been here long, when I heard some one trying to get in; and thinking as how it might be some of the banditti that inhabited old ruinous places, I hid myself up, and, when you came by, ran out to frighten you, so that I might have time to get away in the mean time; but ye were after me in a minute, and have done to me what no mortal ever did before." And so this, said Edward, is all that made you so solicitous to avoid me. Verily it doth seem strange, that, being well armed, you should be afraid to meet me, as you must have known there was no one but myself." As he said this, he arose from off the man; when all on a sudden he received a most terrible blow from behind, which completely stunned and knocked him down. He remained for some time quite insensible of every thing that was passing; and when he did recover

his senses, it was only to change for a situation still worse ; for the blow he had received pained him so intolerably, that he was nearly as it were distracted, and he remained for some time without being able to stir.

At length, however, collecting all his strength, he arose, and looking around found himself quite alone ; the light and his sword, together with that of his adversary, which he had taken from him, lay on the pavement by him ; but the man himself had made his escape, and was gone. It now entered his head, that this fellow was one of the banditti he pretended to be afraid of, and he repented that he had suffered him to stay so long, on the pretence of recovering his breath, as he certainly must have had companions in the chapel, to whom, during that time, he might unperceived have made signals to come to his assistance ; and the attention of the knight being solely engrossed with holding his adversary, they might with ease have come behind, and laid him on the ground senseless.

As he reflected on this, he could scarce contain himself for vexation, and endeavoured to trace them to where they had gone, by the mark of the blood on the pavement ; which he followed until it went up to the altar, where it on a sudden disappeared, and no more traces by which he could tell whither they had gone were to be seen. A suspicion then entered his mind, that there must be some secret means of access to the chapel near there : this sus-



picion took such hold on him, that he traversed the space round the altar three times, before he could prevail on himself to leave it ; and then it was with extreme reluctance, and more owing to the pain in his head, and his incapability of staying any longer. With a slow and heavy pace, and as doleful a mind, he took the way to the door, and entering the passage, he contrived by resting at intervals, in order to recover from his fatigue, once more to reach the library ; where he threw himself on a chair, half dead with cold, fatigue, and the terror which had unavoidably crept over him, in traversing so dismal a place. Having drank a large draught of the wine which stood in the basket, and replenished the fire with some fresh wood, he sat with his eyes fixed, unable to move : the pain occasioned by the blow he had received was insupportable to such a degree, that it made him nearly mad ; and had not fatigue made it impossible for him to move, he would have been utterly unable to keep his seat. These combined, with his other ailments, naturally inclined him to sleep ; and at length his eyes insensibly closed, and he fell into a profound repose ; from which he awoke not until the sun had for some time illuminated the colours of the painted casement ; and finding himself much refreshed, he arose, and hastened out of the library, to go to his own apartment, with the intention of changing his dress.

In the passage he was met by Michael, who,

eager to know the result of the knight's adventures, was hastening down to see. As soon as he perceived the knight, he exclaimed, " Well, sir, how have ye passed the night? I hope ye have fought and driven out all the spirits. Laid, sir, why your head looks as though some one would have knocked it off; it looks, forsooth, like as if a body had given a horrible blow with a huge iron bar. I hope the ghost dont use iron bars in fight. Egad, we shall stand not a bit of chance, to go to combat with them." " Well done, thou idle prater, cried the knight; by thy own addiction to chattering hast thou fallen widely into error; for here have you been talking of spirits, as beings to combat with, when, by the account of such as believe in those things like yourself, they are composed of nought but air." and not stopping to hear any more of the squire's talk, he hastened to his own apartment; where, having changed his dress, and contrived, by altering the fashion of his hair, to conceal the marks of the blow, in order to prevent enquiries, which might only tend to cause uneasiness, without being of any service, he descended into the sitting room, where the whole party were waiting, eager to know the termination of the adventure. At breakfast therefore, he gave a full detail of every thing that had happened, except his having received any injury, and accounted for the alteration in his appearance, by saying, for excuse, that the wind had

blown the light towards him, and burnt off his hair.

That there was some living being in the habit of frequenting the castle, there was now no doubt; as the knight had beheld it with his own eyes quite plain: and they were now immediately upon the alert, to endeavour to discover by what path it had got away. They searched not only on that side, but all round, but no appearance of any outlet, except the one that went into the great avenue, offered itself; and that whoever it was had not gone there was certain. To their great disappointment, therefore, they were obliged to give up all hopes of discovering, at least for the present, who it was; and content themselves with the certain assurance, that some one did come. It was the opinion of the whole party, that the man whom Edward had encountered in the chapel belonged to some troop of banditti; and to prevent any evil consequences arising therefrom, Sir Francis established a regulation, that no one should be out after dusk, lest, meeting with any of them, it might bring on an assault; and though being, including Anthony, nine in number of men, and well armed, they were sufficiently strong to resist and repel the attacks of them, yet it was most advisable, that, if it were possible, such an encounter should be avoided.

This regulation was kept for some time with great exactness, and the figure which had crossed

the yard was nearly forgotten ; when an accident happened, which recalled this circumstance to their recollection. When the gates of the castle were about to be locked one evening, the Lady Ellena and Philippa were missing, and likewise Michael : it was well known that they had early in the afternoon gone out, attended by the squire ; but whither was a question no one could answer. The knights traversed the wood with lighted torches, and went over every path and winding they could think of, hoping to find and escort them home ; but no one appeared, nor was there the least trace on the gravel walk to tell which way they had been. With a heavy pace therefore they took the way back to communicate to Sir Francis and the Baron these miserable tidings : they could not imagine the cause of their long stay, and began to fear something terrible had happened, which prevented their return. At length, the Baron's two sons having promised to sit up, and let the persons in in case they should come during the night, the rest of the party were prevailed on to retire ; and the knights, as they would there be more at hand to let in the wanderers, went into the library ; where, seating themselves, the time passed away in conversation. Presently they heard a voice calling out aloud for admittance, which from the sound they judged to be that of Michael ; but to convince themselves more fully of the circumstance, they got up, and, going to the window, looked out, and beheld the squire

exerting himself to his utmost stretch in bellowing and roaring. At a short distance stood the two ladies; and as soon as the squire perceived them at the window, he cried out, "Laud, sirs, what do ye stand looking out there for, as if for all the world nothing was the matter! Why dont ye come down, and let us in! We have had enough of the air, not to want to stay out here all night. Why dont ye come, and let us in!" The knights waited not to hear any more, but, running out, unlocked the gate, and called out aloud that they had done so: when, finding the ladies too much fatigued to answer their enquiries; they enquired of Michael whither they had been: to which the squire replied, "Laud, sir, been! why we have been where folks I believe never went before; we have been going about in the wood ever since we set out almost, and had like to have got our eyes scratched out with the thorns." Having just heard this account, the knights did not stop to listen to a long harangue, which the squire would fain have given them; but without delay conducted the ladies into the library; where, having brought forth some wine, and sat a little while, the whole party retired.

It was somewhat late on the following day before the whole party were assembled in the sitting room; and Sir Francis, having entreated the ladies to relate the cause of their stay, they did so, and accounted for it by informing them, that after wandering about among the thickets and bushes for

some time, for the purpose of gathering the violets and other flowers that were beneath them, they found they had imperceptibly wandered so far out of the path, that all their endeavours to regain it were fruitless; and the more they tried, the more they became entangled and perplexed: that at length they arrived at a large cave, in the side of a rock, where they remained for some time, to recover from their fatigue; but after some time, not being over-inclined to wait there till day-light, they, as it was then nearly dark, once more went out, in order to attempt to find some means of getting out of the forest. Their endeavours, however, were entirely fruitless, and they were just on the point of returning to the cave to pass their time there, in preference to the open air, when they discovered a path, or rather the remains of a path, thickly interwoven with briars and thorns; and not doubting but that it would lead them whither they wished, they followed it, and presently arrived at one side of the court, where, sending Michael forward to look around, and call out for admittance, they were let in by the knights.

This account being given, the knights, as they doubted not but that this was the path by which the person Edward had seen had access to the castle, were immediately upon the alert, and instruments for cutting down the briars, and rendering it more passable, were put into use. For some time did they work with great vigour at this employment,

when their progress was suddenly interrupted by a rivulet, the bridge of which, that had formerly gone over it, was entirely broken to pieces. Here then was a stop put for some time to their proceedings, as the privilege of Anthony went not so far as to permit them to cut down any trees for that purpose, and without permission they dared not do it; but a thought suddenly occurred to them, that if themselves could not cross it, no more could the person who was in the habit of frequenting the castle; and therefore that there must certainly be some other place, which they had not yet discovered, in which it was possible to cross over. On examination, they discovered that the path turned off, and led along the bank of the stream, until it came to a single plank laid across, on the opposite side of which the path was again continued to a large rock, in which was a flight of steps, that led about half-way up to a large hole. As it was late at night when they completed this discovery, they postponed continuing their search any farther until the following day, and returned to the castle, where they gave a full detail of their proceedings to the Baron and Sir Francis.

The next day they endeavoured to persuade Michael to accompany them, as from his fears they knew if there was any thing he would be first to see it, and might therefore be a very necessary personage to discover what no one else would. They at first got nothing but an exclamation of "Laud,

sirs, what do ye want me to go running into such dismal forests for, at the risk of having my eyes scratched out with briars at every step. I cant think why volks should want a body to go poking one's self into things one has no business with, no, nor the least concern : ye nid not think to get me prancing in there, not I indeed." But the knights, having removed the objection of being blinded with thorns, by the assurance that all such things were removed, as Michael, having been for some time past employed in the opposite part of the forest, was hitherto unacquainted with this circumstance, they, after much persuasion and entreaty, prevailed on him to go, on condition that he should be allowed to give free vent to his terror, in case he was seized with a violent fright ; and when a thing of such importance, as the knights considered this, was in question, they readily consented to this condition.

Having therefore equipped himself, with a small stone bottle of certain spirits to refresh him, lest he should be taken with a violent terror, and a sword to defend himself from the banditti, if it so happened that they were attacked by them, the party set out ; the knights going first, and the ladies, with Sir Francis and the Baron, who were desirous to be present at the undoing of the mystery, followed at a short distance. They proceeded thus for some time, and, ascending the rock, got down through the cavity into a large cave below, which was the same that had offered shelter to the two ladies on the



night of their losing themselves. From this no outlet appeared but the principal entrance, and the one by which they had come in; but on looking round a little, they perceived a small post, on the top of which was fixed a brass ring; pulling this, it brought up with it a large square of the rock, which served as a door to a narrow passage, that went up to the top of the rock. Without delay, therefore, they went up thither, and descended by an easy slope the side that was not perpendicular, and which went down towards a lawn, in the middle of which stood a small cottage; at the door of which they knocked, not doubting but it was inhabited by the person whom Edward had seen. However, no one answered their call; and the third time, knowing that if no one was there, their entrance could not any way signify, they opened the door, and looked into all the apartments, but could perceive nobody; but just as they were crossing the passage, some one ran out at a back door; and not reflecting on the alarm their appearance might occasion, the knights every one of them immediately followed, and called out aloud, that they intended no harm. The damsel, for such it was, upon hearing this, turned round, hesitating whether to stop, or continue her flight; but perceiving, from the appearance of the knights, that they could have no evil intentions, she without farther delay approached them; and they enquired if they could do her any service, inviting her at the same time to accompany them to

the castle; with which invitation she very readily complied; and taking the road thither, Sir Francis entreated her to relate by what cause she had become an inhabitant of the cottage; which she promised to do when they got to the castle.

Having arrived there, the knights took off their vizers, which they had on before, and seated themselves; when the young lady, happening to cast a glance on Edward, uttered a loud shriek, and fainted away. It was some time before the exertions of the whole party were to any purpose; and no sooner did she behold the young knight, who was the cause, than she again fell into a state of insensibility; and lest their endeavours should again be made fruitless in this manner, Sir Francis thought it advisable that he should leave the apartment. Accordingly, with a melancholy mind, he took his way along the avenue, and, throwing himself on the first stone bench that came in his way, gave vent to his uneasiness of mind. He felt himself drawn by a secret attraction towards the young damsel; and to be thus forced to be absent from her company, was insupportable in a great degree.

His attachment to the Lady Ellena, which he had kept a profound secret to every one, now recurred to him with a double degree of violence; for that the Baron would consent to their marriage, with no other recommendation to him than having been taken under the protection of Sir Francis, was a thing most unlikely. For the first time he wished to

return to England, where there would be at least more likelihood of his real birth being discovered than there. It was with pleasure therefore that he perceived Michael approach with a summons from Sir Francis, as there was now no further necessity for his absence: and, hastening into the castle, he found the young lady perfectly recovered, and she now proposed to fulfil her promise of relating what had brought her to be an inhabitant of that cottage. The auditors having therefore drawn their seats round, she began.

“In the first place, you must know, that although, since my leaving England, which is my native country, and for a short time before, I have assumed a feigned name, my real one is Matilda de Valence, and that I am daughter of Sir Philip de Valence.”

At this name Sir Francis and the Baron looked amazed, and started. They would fain have spoke, but astonishment deprived them of the power of utterance; and supposing the real fate of Sir Philip would now be discovered, as the Baron likewise had suspicions, as well as many others, though he kept them a secret, of the truth of the report that he had been killed in battle, they sat fixed and immovable on their seats, and the young lady thus went on:

“Sir Philip, as perhaps it may be known to you, was called, at the time his lady was near being delivered of an infant, to attend the king on an expedition to Scotland; when, after he had been for some time, we received letters, which we afterwards found had

been forged, saying, that he had been killed. A short time after this, Sir Humphrey de Valence, who was sole heir to the estate, provided the infant, of which Lady de Valence expected every day to be delivered, was a daughter, and next after it if it was a son, came down to the castle, under pretence of keeping the grounds and estates in proper order, until such a time as it was determined whether he was to be sole possessor of them or no; though it was more properly to make himself complete master of them, and put every thing out of the way beforehand that might offer any opposition to him. For the castle and domain being entailed on the nearest male relatives of the possessors, I could not have any thing to do in the affair, and was at that time only ten years of age.

As soon as Sir Humphrey was come down, he began his work, by turning away all the old servants that had lived in the castle for years, and brought in their stead a parcel of monsters and ruffians, whose very looks was enough to give one the vapours. These fellows filled every corner of the castle with noise and riot, and made the place a perfect confusion. I myself boded no good from this change, although my mother, not wishing to make opposition, and being moreover not in a situation for it, did not oppose it. In a short time, what I expected came to pass; without having any reason given us why, we were removed to the end of the building next the chapel, where to our great astonishment we found

ourselves fallen into the devices of Sir Humphrey, and so closely confined, that we could not get out even for a moment. His design now was very evident, in removing all the old attendants, to deprive us of this last resource, and means of intercourse with any one, who might have power and inclination effectually to serve us. It so happened, however, the man whom he had appointed to take care of us, and see we did not escape, was, by dint of great argument and persuasion, prevailed on to let us take the air in the ruins of the chapel adjoining, where no one was likely to discover us; and as this mode of doing so was preferred to none at all, we gladly took advantage of it: and thus did the first week of our imprisonment pass away.

The time at length came, when Lady de Valence was delivered of a son; but knowing, that if it came to the ears of Sir Humphrey, he would immediately contrive to put an end to its existence, we kept it a profound secret; and having procured a large basket, placed it therein, with some things of various sorts, and a note, entreating any one who might chance to look that way, and find it, to take compassion on it. This being done, I, under pretence of walking in the chapel, went out with it, and, slipping out without our keeper's perceiving it, placed the basket beneath a bush, which was by the side of a stream that ran through the grounds, and returned again, without any one's knowledge but ourselves.

Some time then passed away, more pleasantly than before, when we suddenly received a visit from Sir Humphrey, who in the greatest rage imaginable came, and began reproaching us for haunting him in his visions, and disturbing his rest; for it seems some of the peasants, having seen us in the dusk when walking in the chapel, made a rumour that it was haunted; and this made him nearly mad with rage. Having vented the full extent of his anger, away he went; and the same evening we had notice to prepare for our departure from the place.

The next morning, a large vehicle came to the side of the building before day-light, to prevent exciting the curiosity of the villagers, and, being mounted in this, drove on; and, after travelling slowly for several days, it brought us to a castle, which to my great astonishment was that of Sir Everard Tracy, who had formerly been a great friend to Sir Philip, and who, I was certain, could not be acquainted with Sir Humphrey's intentions.

But to proceed. Here we were set down; and our conductor, who was one of the most horrible ruffians of the whole set, shewed us to a little tower, and let us in; when, to our great astonishment, we found Sir Philip there, but in such an altered state, that we were frightened to behold him. He was grown pale and thin, from anxiety to know what was become of us. He had been, on his way home, beset in the forest that adjoins the estate by a band of ruffians, who were Sir Humphrey's emissaries, and,

after a vigorous resistance, wounded and disarmed by superior numbers. He had then been conveyed there, and remained ever since.

His company made our confinement delightful to what it had been before, and he daily recovered his cheerfulness; when we received a visit from Sir Humphrey, which entirely spoiled every thing. When he came, my father was walking in a certain secret passage that led up to the rooms above; and the countenance of our vile persecutor brightened up on perceiving this, and he began to declare his love for Lady de Valence. She, as you may suppose, turned from him in contempt, and called aloud on Sir Philip for assistance. He had heard every thing that passed, and, enraged to fury, rushed in; snatched a sword from one of the ruffians who stood by, and falling on Sir Humphrey, who drew his to defend himself, a most furious combat ensued. The abominable wretch was driven through all the apartments that composed the lower story of the tower, and Sir Philip, having succeeded in forcing him to retreat up the passage, was just on the point of getting the victory; their weapons clashed in a horrible manner, and the sword was already up-raised that would have terminated the combat, by laying the monster dead, when one of his men, perceiving the danger his master was in, fixed an arrow in his bow; and, drawing the string, let it fly. It took effect, and Sir Philip fell down the stairs with a groan, and expired. Imagine what must have been our horror and

affright, when we expected that a moment would have restored us to our liberty, at beholding this sight! We shrieked aloud; and the monster Sir Humphrey gloried in being thus rid of the only person who could effectually oppose his wishes.

At length, finding all his importunities in vain, he departed: but his absence was purchased at a dear price; for on the next day, as we were sitting in melancholy silence, Lady de Valence was seized with violent pains, and in less than half an hour died. Sir Humphrey, to revenge himself, had contrived, by means of one of his men, to administer poison into some wine which she drank; which operated so fatally. I called out aloud for assistance, but it was some time before any one came. At length two of the ruffians made their appearance, and seemed struck with horror at beholding the scene; so taking advantage of this, I by some persuasion prevailed on them to assist in my escape, and they promised to come at night, and conduct me beyond the walls.

The time came, and, proceeding cautiously, I got out, and we travelled on, until, going through a wood, we were met by robbers. I myself fortunately made my escape; and, embarking at the first sea-port in a little vessel that was coming over hither, I fixed my residence in the cottage where you found me, and have remained here ever since, which is now near twelve years."



## CHAPTER IV.

**T**HUS did the Lady Matilda end her account : but besides this, she related various things connected with the appearance Sir Francis had seen at Sir Everard Tracy's, which, as it would be merely relating what has been already mentioned, are not here repeated, and which fully convinced Sir Francis, that the man in armour had been no other than Sir Philip, and that the female he had seen run through the apartments adjoining that in which he had slept was no one but the Lady Matilda, who had gone there to deposit the scrawl, which he had found beneath the shield, and having concealed herself on his approach behind one of the pictures, had taken advantage of his attention being engaged to run off.

But Sir Francis and the Baron sat for some time astonished, and looking at each other ; the latter not having in the least expected to hear such an account, and the former being confirmed in what he often had entertained a suspicion of, that Edward was the son of Sir Philip ; and to put it beyond the power of all doubt, he resolved to produce the things which Father Peter had given him. But it being then late, he delayed it until the following

evening, when this important set of articles was produced. And first of all he delivered the note, which had accompanied the basket, and the scroll he had taken from beneath the shield, for examination, into the hands of the Lady Matilda; which being by her identified, and declared to be the same which were in the places where she had deposited them, Sir Francis proceeded, and drew forth from the casket a large seal, on which was engraved the arms of de Valence, and which had descended in the family for near two centuries. This not requiring any thing to prove, it was immediately set aside, and gave place to a diamond ring, on the centre piece of which were the initials of Sir Philip. Then came a part of the insignia of the order to which he belonged. And the next thing that presented itself was two pictures, one of himself, and the other of his lady, set in diamonds and pearls; these, with divers other jewels of great value, formed the whole of the set, and put every doubt at nought. Had Sir Francis examined them before, he would immediately have known this circumstance; but it so happened, that whenever he had fixed to do it, something had intervened to prevent his intention, and it had not been done.

The whole party congratulated the young knight on his birth having been ascertained to a certainty, and himself and the Lady Matilda received each other with the affection due to their near relationship. He could scarcely believe but what he was in

a dream, so extraordinary did the change appear. A short time after this, Matilda, going to some of the neighbouring villages, brought back letters from England for the Baron. The letters he had before received from thence had always brought evil intelligence; it therefore somewhat damped the universal joy that had spread itself through the whole party: but when they came to be opened, instead of having news calculated to make them dismal, it was quite the contrary, as it contained intelligence, that the Baron might with safety return as soon as he pleased, as what had occasioned his removing was now quite gone, in such a manner, that it could not act against him.

Nor was the Baron the only one who had reason to rejoice; for it likewise mentioned, that Sir Humphrey de Valence had, after attaining to very great favour with the king, by certain conduct, been precipitated from the height to which he had got, and fallen into dire disgrace. That the king had, in his rage, positively forbid his appearance at court; and, having seized on the estate which he had, that bordered on that of Sir Francis, had given it to another of his favourites. Thus was one great reason of his coming from his own country removed. And the other, which was the hatred of Peter Gaveston, was likewise done away; as it mentioned besides, that the noblemen had very openly expressed their disapprobation of the king's great attachment to that favourite, and loudly remonstrated against it; and

Sir Francis being a great friend to all or the principal part of them, he knew, that if any thing was done against him, they would immediately rise up with one consent, and declaim against it as an infraction.

These letters therefore, instead of depressing his spirits, and putting the party in the dismal, served only to increase their mirth ; and a council was forthwith held, in what manner they should proceed ; in which it was determined, that as the Baron had some relations at court at Paris, whom he wished to visit, that they should set out from the castle at the end of the month ; and, going up thither, make a short stay ; and then, taking a vessel from Calais, get to England before the autumnal gales began. But in the mean time, they resolved to pass away this time as pleasantly as possible ; and for that purpose, hired a fisherman's bark, in which they made daily excursions on the water.

The Lady Matilda had on her first arrival resided at a monastery, until the cottage was repaired, and made habitable ; and having sent intelligence to the Lady Abbess of the sudden change of her situation, the lady invited her with the whole party to come and spend an evening at the convent. This invitation was readily accepted, and the whole of the morning previous the knights were busily employed in adorning the boat for the occasion, and devising new means of decoration. The sides were ornamented with boughs and branches of flowers, inter-

mingled with the green of various trees, and sent forth a refreshing odour to a very great degree.

In the afternoon, the weather promising to continue as fine as it had been the whole day, the party embarked, and a fresh breeze lending its assistance to impel them forward, they were soon got a considerable distance from where they set out. The knights with their squires took upon themselves the conducting of the boat; and while one half were employed in doing this, the others sat and rested themselves with the rest of the party, to see every thing to most advantage. They went very near the beach, and pursued the various windings of the shore; and as this made their way considerably longer than if they had gone on straight, it was above half an hour before they arrived at the place of destination.

At length, however, the monastery, situated on the point of a projecting rock, and rearing its towers and spires aloft in the air, made its appearance, and opened to their view as they emerged from a little bay, into which they had gone to view the shore; and in a short time they found themselves at the foot of the path which led up to it. Getting out therefore, they fastened the boat to the stump of a tree, and ascending the slope, which was in front of the building, they were met at the arched gateway by the Lady Abbess, who greeted them with a cordial welcome, and conducted them into the inner apartment, where refreshments of various sorts

were laid out in abundance, that strongly indicated the hospitality of the provider.

Having partaken of these to their satisfaction, they went out to walk in the gardens of the monastery, and continued there for near three hours, when their host proposed returning: and on entering the hall, their astonishment was not a little excited, to perceive spread out on a long table in the hall a most splendid repast: vases of cream, and huge bowls of fruit of various sorts and hues, shone forth with resplendent lustre, and invited the beholders to partake of it; and as the walking so long had raised in the personages a keen appetite, they had by no means any objection to this sight; and, without any farther delay, sat down, and fell to; so that what with the inviting look of the viands, and the disposition of the guests to set aside all ceremony, they began quickly to disappear. Nor was the table at which the knights' squires sat less abundantly supplied; the eyes of Michael sparkled with delight when he beheld it, and he could scarcely forbear bursting into an exclamation of joy.

The party, having partook of this, began to think of returning, as it might be dangerous to be overtaken by night in the boat on a shore, where there were so many rocks and different windings: but on going out, they perceived, to their great dismay, that the sky was considerably overcast, and portended a storm. Hoping however to get home be-

fore it came in all its violence, they without delay got in, and unloosing the boat, the knights exerted themselves to their utmost to get back to the castle before the storm. But it was in vain they tried: the clouds, collecting together in vast columns, broke in all their fury over their heads, and assisted with the wind, which had increased from a breeze to a violent gale, drove them about at its pleasure, and completely defeated their efforts to move rapidly; as, instead of going straight forward, the boat was continually driven by the violence of the waves either on one side or the other. They once thought of attempting to gain the shore, and then go the rest of the way to the castle on foot; but the waves beat so violently near the shore, that the result of an attempt at such a measure would have been inevitable destruction. It was too late to return to the monastery, as they were more than half way to the castle; and, in short, their only expedient was to endeavour to keep off more pressing danger, and keep the boat from oversetting; and they were therefore obliged to be contented, and continue beating about as well as they could.

At length the castle appeared in sight, and they were very near the foot of the avenue, when, lo! a bark, with about twenty men in it, appeared in sight, and continued rolling about at no great distance from them for some short space, which gave them an opportunity of distinguishing that they were all armed; and in a short time the boat dis-

appeared behind a point of land just by. No sooner were they gone, than the party gave vent to their astonishment and alarm ; the ladies turned pale, the knights looked amazed, the Baron and Sir Francis were perfectly confounded, and the fertile imagination of Michael presented that they could be no other than the banditti, whom Edward had combated in the chapel.

Having arrived at the mouth of the avenue, they landed ; and proceeding up it, their astonishment was raised beyond description on entering the court, to perceive in it the most direful marks of riot and destruction : the palings were torn up, the statues demolished almost, and the bushes and hedges pulled nearly into pieces, and deprived of their largest branches. Entering the hall of the castle, they perceived, seated at the farther end on the stones, Anthony, who had refused to accompany them, and who, shaking like a leaf, dared not even to look up, until they spoke, and by this means made it known who they were. This immediately, however, dispelled his fears ; and getting up, he began accounting for his terror ; but it being late, Sir Francis thought it most advisable to delay it until the next day, and that they should for the present think only of repose.

They therefore retired to rest ; and the next morning, the knights, having a great desire to see the full extent of the mischief which had been done, went out before breakfast to examine, and went all round



the castle. The chapel had sustained less injury than any other part, but it had more marks of such being attempted than any other, as nearly all the pillars which supported the roof had been tried at; but the means which had been used not having been strong enough to overturn such a large body, they remained in their situation.

When they returned, Anthony, who was as impatient to recount as they were to hear what had happened, began by saying, that after they had been gone for about half an hour, he heard a monstrous talking in the court-yard; and going to one of the windows to see what was the cause, he perceived a dozen armed men. Frightened out of his very senses, he hastened away, lest he should be perceived; and going to a grating, that was in one of the towers by the side of the gate, from whence he could behold them to more advantage, while he was not himself seen in the least, there took his station, and could perceive they were disputing whether or no they should enter the castle: the greater part were for not doing it, but the opposite party persisted in their own way to such a degree, that they drew their swords, and began a furious combat, which terminated to his great joy in favour of the larger party. But his joy was somewhat abated when he perceived their intentions, as, without farther ceremony, they began tearing up the pales, and destroying every thing that came within their reach. Having done this, they went away to demolish the things in other

parts, and he with difficulty staggered into the hall, where, not being able to get any farther for fear, he fell down, and there remained, until the return of the party delivered him from his terrors.

No sooner had he given this account, than the knights, not doubting but that these were the banditti, proposed that they should sit up, and watch for them, as they were continually disturbing them with their visits; and, if they came, alarm the rest of the party, as they had not a doubt, that if they were once attacked, and driven away, they would not again venture to intrude themselves on the castle. Accordingly it was resolved that they should do so; and the Baron's two sons, as Edward had been the one to do it on a former occasion, were appointed; so that when every one else had retired, they took their station in the library, from whence events of such importance to the household had been achieved; and as it was got too warm for a fire, they seated themselves in the door-way, that if any noise was in the chapel, they might be more certain of hearing it. And to pass away the time, they had recourse to the same method as Edward, and began to draw forth, from the recesses and shelves that were around the room, the least tattered of the volumes, and endeavour to make out their contents.

But leaving them to examine the mouldy remains and tattered mouse-eaten fragments of these volumes, we will return to what happened to the rest

of the party after this night, and relate the knights' adventures hereafter.

The whole of the male party had arms by them, and were in readiness to start up in a moment ; and being surprised at not having been called up, they in the morning hastened up, impatient to know the result of the adventure ; and coming down, ran to the library to see what had occurred ; when, to their great astonishment, neither of the knights were to be seen, and no trace of their having been there, but the volumes scattered about here and there, which they had been using. In every place were they called, and looked for, but could not be found. Michael was sent into the neighbouring villages, to enquire if they had been there ; but the answer was every where, No ; and the party began to be very uneasy about their safety, as they could not conceive the cause of their disappearance.

Three weeks passed on without their making their appearance ; and the Baron had now waited a fortnight over the time which had been first fixed for their departure. It was therefore resolved, that they should set out, and not wait any longer, as, if they stayed, it would be impossible to execute what the Baron had intended, and get to England before the bad weather came on.

Scarcely had they taken this resolution, when letters arrived from the owner of the castle, who by some means had had it come to his ears that there were some persons inhabiting it ; and, enraged to a

very great degree at what he deemed the presumption of Anthony, in admitting them without his special permission, had immediately sent orders for them to quit it immediately ; and the mighty lord was not contented with this, but must needs displace Anthony from his post, and put in his room a peasant of the neighbourhood ; so that it was determined Anthony should go with them. Michael was without farther delay sent to purchase horses at the village ; and this necessary equipage being prepared, they set out early one morning.

The procession moved from the door in the following order : first came Sir Francis, the Baron, and the ladies, mounted on palfreys, and Edward on a grey steed : then came a large vehicle, filled with baggage of divers sorts, belonging to the whole party ; while on the top rode the female attendants of the damsels, with Anthony to guide the vehicle : and, lastly, came the squires of the knights, and Michael to bring up the rear of this very grand procession. In this manner did they proceed the whole day, and traversed various roads and heaths, until dusk overtook them in the midst of a barren marsh, which was bounded on one side by the sea, and at the farther end by a large forest. No human habitation appeared in sight, nor any living object but themselves. They looked around, and nought presented itself to view ; so that they began to fear they should be benighted in the open road ; when the ears of Michael, which were open to welcome in pro-

portion as they were to unwelcome, suddenly were struck by the barking of a dog, and in a moment after they perceived a shepherd, accompanied by the animal which had occasioned the welcome sound, who were returning from attending on a flock of sheep, which they now perceived penned up at a short distance. Riding up therefore, they enquired how far they were from any place of shelter; when he invited them to come to his cottage, which was, he said, at a short distance: and readily accepting this invitation, they accompanied him a short distance along the border of the wood, until they came to a cottage, which had been concealed from their view by the trees; and the shepherd having directed Michael to the place where he was to find the hay for the horses, the rest entered, and sat down to a cheerful fire, which was exceedingly acceptable, after the damp and chilly air of the marsh.

But scarcely had they taken their station ten minutes, before they were assailed with the din of a most dreadful outcry; and the words, *thief, loon, villanous varlet*, and *knave*, resounded with a terrible degree of violence about the building; and, astonished beyond measure at it, they arose, and went out at the door to see the cause; when they beheld, to their great surprise, Michael seized fast hold of by the shepherd's wife, who, not having received any notice of the arrival of the guests, had taken him for a thief, and was rating him in a very violent manner, and exclaiming, "Soho, you cream-

faced villain ! so ye thinks to get yourself in here, and put your cheats upon us for nothing : no, no, ye nid not think that I be such an one to put up with it, not I, you thief !"

In this manner was she rating the terrified squire, who, unable to disengage himself from the furious grasp with which she held him by the collar, stood pale and speechless with fright ; and lucky was it that the party came up, and, by informing his assailant how it was, delivered him from her hands ; and peace and quietness being restored, the party returned ; and as Michael was too much frightened to take care of the horses, another of the squires was left for that purpose, and the party once more entered the cottage, and seated themselves.

Early in the evening they retired to rest, and continued in a profound quiet until midnight, when they were suddenly awakened by a most terrible knocking at the door, with loud demands of admittance, and a noise, and swearing, which in the opinion of the party boded no good. Getting up therefore, Edward looked out, and perceived some armed men. Assuming a fierce voice, he asked them what they wanted. To which one of them, who was their chief, replied, that they were in search of certain persons, who had offended their lord, and must positively search the house, to see if they were there. This answer immediately suggested to Edward the whole of how it really stood ; which was, that the mighty lord, to whom the castle belonged,

had, an hour or two after their departure, arrived there ; and not having been to the place for twenty years at least, he was much astonished at the depredations of the banditti on the trees and shrubs ; and, without considering that these same depredations were made only on things which the inhabitants that had been there, that he was so incensed against, had made and planted, he was in a great anger about it, and sent forth these his retainers in pursuit of them, to account for it.

The knight, therefore, delivered an account of the man's answer and his suspicions to Sir Francis and those within, and they were now in a most perplexing dilemma, for there was not a moment for consideration, as the men had redoubled their clamour and noise, and threatened, if they were not instantly admitted, to force open the door, nay, or perhaps what was worse, pull down the whole house about their ears ; and it was finally determined, that as they were nine in number with their host, they should oppose them, and risk an engagement. Accordingly, having armed themselves, they descended in a body to the door, and, opening it, sallied out on the besiegers with great vigour, and a furious combat took place ; which presently ended in the complete discomfiture and driving away of the lord's retainers, who were most of them sorely wounded by the valour of their opponents. And thus did they pass this affair, which at first appeared of so disagreeable a nature, without any serious

consequences ; and being satisfied their assailants were gone off a considerable distance, and that they would not return, they once more retired, and forgot themselves in sleep.

The next morning, as soon as it was daylight, they arose ; and Sir Francis having liberally rewarded their host for his hospitality, they set out ; and continued travelling in the same manner as they had done on the preceding day, stopping only as long and where it was absolutely necessary on the road. They arrived by dusk at a village within two miles of Paris, where they purposed to pass the night, and perform the remainder of the journey next day : so alighting from their horses, they went into a house, and seated themselves in the end next the fire. The house at which they stopped being a place of public resort for travellers, it was necessarily filled with a number of persons ; and after they had sat there a little while, there entered two men muffled up in long coats, who, on taking off these cumbersome appendages, they discovered to their great astonishment to be the two knights, the Baron's two sons ; nor were they less surprised to find the party there.

After having vented their surprise on both sides, and satisfied themselves with asking each other various questions, the Baron, who was impatient to know the cause of their sudden disappearance, requested them to relate the different circumstances



that had happened to them since their going to sit up ; which they did in the following words.

“ After we had been for some time employed in looking at the volumes, and had ransacked nearly the whole of the recesses and shelves that were in the library, we thought we heard a noise in the chapel, and listening for a moment, were confirmed in our suspicions, as we distinctly heard a footstep re-echoed on the stone pavement. Without delay, therefore, we seized the lights, and, having unsheathed our swords, ran along the passage, making however as little noise as possible, and attempted to open the door at the end : it creaked on the hinges, and by so doing gave the banditti within timely notice of our approach, so that they had sufficient time to conceal themselves ; and when we entered, we could perceive no one. Astonished at this circumstance, as we were certain that but a moment before we had heard some one quite plain, we went all round the chapel, and as we traversed it, our doubts, instead of diminishing, increased, as there was no other way in our knowledge to get out, besides the one by which we had come in, but at the windows, and these being raised very high from the ground, it would have required some time to get up, and go through. Five times we searched, as we thought, all round the chapel, and in every place, though we neglected to look behind the monuments, which afterwards proved most material to us ; and having

contented ourselves with the assurance that there could not possibly be any one there, we at the sixth turn proceeded towards the gate by which we had come in, and putting our swords in the sheaths, we walked on carelessly ; when all on a sudden no less than a dozen men's heads started up from behind the row of monuments that was on our right hand, and, ere we could draw our weapons, or recover from the surprise into which such an unexpected sight had thrown us, the heads leaped over, and discovered to our view so many of the banditti, who, running up, surrounded and disarmed us in the twinkling of an eye, and then, leaving three of their company to see we did not run away, they went out by a way we could then perceive. They presently returned with a large quantity of plunder, and successively brought in several loads of it ; which being at length all collected together, they carried them all across to the other side ; and when they had done this, they lastly conducted ourselves thither ; when to our infinite surprise we saw that one of the pannels slid backwards and forwards, and served as an entrance to a staircase which led down under ground, into which we were ushered, and descended to the bottom, as resistance, unarmed, and to so numerous a body of men, would have been folly, and the certain way to destruction.

This staircase, or flight of steps, went down into a passage, which led to some vaults that went under the castle, and which in fact belonged to it ; but

the banditti, having found out the means of access to them, had, as they had no fear of interruption, for the castle was at that time uninhabited, and had no chance of having any inhabitants, taken possession of it as a store and general repository of all the plunder they took in their excursions, both by sea and land ; for these men, it seems, united the character of banditti by land, and pirates by sea, and possessed a very formidable force in both.

Having descended the flight of stairs, we went along the passage, which was tolerably lighted with lamps and tapers ; and one of the men opening a door at the end, we entered the vaults, which were filled with treasure piled up in vast heaps and mountains, and having passed through about half-a-dozen of these, we came to one in which was no treasure, but in its stead five or six banditti.

The pirates who had taken us were in the habit of making war on the other parties of the same sorts, and great battles frequently happened, in the last of which these had been taken prisoners, and they were kept there until such a time as their companions thought fit to procure their liberation, by giving up a part of their treasure in return. It was with these that we were to be left ; and having given us a sufficiency of provision to last until they came again, the banditti who had taken us went away, and left us.

The confinement in itself would have been nothing, but the company we had made it insupport-

able. They were continually getting drunk, and in so doing left us scarce a sufficiency for ourselves: for when after any of their fits of intoxication there was any wine left in the skins that they had taken, and which were, you may be sure, very tolerable in number, they were not contented with having made themselves drunk, but must needs throw these remains about on the floor; and in this manner sometimes were nearly whole skins-full wasted and demolished; so that it was no great wonder a sufficient quantity was not left for ourselves, and that we were verily half starved. This was not all; they used to spend their nights in revelry and riot, making such a noise, as was enough to confound the senses of any one but themselves; so that added to our other inconvenience was the want of sleep, as it was impossible for any such thing, while they were up themselves. They regarded us as quite a different sort of beings to themselves, and were for ever plaguing us to enter on the same kind of life with themselves; saying, their companions would not care to pay the price required for our liberty, to get two more added to their number.

Thus did the time pass on, and near two weeks had now elapsed since the departure of our gaolers, when a circumstance happened, which served to cheer us a little, and make the remainder of the time pass more pleasantly. One night, as our disagreeable companions were as usual rioting in such

a manner, that the vault echoed with the sound, one of them, taking offence at something another had said, pushed him with great violence against the wall, in a part where, it not being very strong, some of the stones fell out; which circumstance, though it escaped their notice, did not pass our observation, we being fortunately close by at the time; and next morning, when they were, according to custom, sleeping off the effects of the night's revel, and all snoring aloud, we resolved to try, and make a hole through, as we had observed the pirates put a considerable quantity of arms into the vault from which this wall separated us. Accordingly we set to work, and without much difficulty removed a considerable quantity of the loosened stones, and then reaching in, got a sufficient quantity of arms to arm us both completely; which we concealed in our clothes in such a manner, that any one who did not know of their being there, could not have the least suspicion of it; and then replacing the stones exactly as they were before, we went in just the same to appearance as if nothing had happened, though in reality we were secretly rejoicing in our good fortune.

Four days after this the pirates came, and having received the price of our companions, set them at liberty, to go where they pleased; and said, they should come in two days to remove us. These two days passed as quickly as the others had done te-

dious ; for when once we came on open ground, we doubted not but that sometime or other we should be able to effect our escape, now we were armed.

The banditti came as they had said they should. Going out of our subterraneous prison, we crossed the chapel, and went out at a secret door behind the altar-piece, which led into a back path through the wood ; which, as soon as the men had carefully concealed the door, by placing a stone image before it, we traversed ; and going to the sea-side, found there was a boat in waiting, which took us to a bark at a little distance. As soon as we were on board, the captain, who was chief of the pirates, set sail, and sailed for two days without stopping ; when he anchored, and we were conveyed to a ruinous building in the midst of a wood, which was one of the haunts of the banditti, and the place from whence they made their excursions. From this we began to meditate our escape ; and taking advantage of the time when the robbers, who had not the least suspicion of our having arms about us, were all out but three, we came upon them by surprise, and having secured their hands with some cords that hung up in the place, took of the fleetest horses out of the stable, and, mounting them, set off at full speed ; and, arriving here, found you, to our great astonishment."

Thus did the two knights relate their narrative ; and it being late by the time they had done, the party soon after retired : and the next day they pursued their

journey, and arrived at Paris, where they received an invitation from the king to spend some time at court ; which, as it suited very opportunely, they accepted. And it was now determined, that the knights should go over to England first, and see the real state of affairs ; and then, if it was safe, the rest should follow after. Accordingly a passage was taken in a vessel, then about to sail from Calais, and they embarked in the morning of a fine day ; when, as the wind blew strongly in their favour, they in less than four hours landed on the quay at Dover, amidst the din of bustle and uproar around.

Having landed, they mounted their horses, which they had brought over with them, and set out for Sir Francis's estate, which was not many miles distant ; where they at length arrived, and, entering the court, rapped at the gate. The old servant, who had been left to take care of the place, presently came out, and with difficulty recollected Edward, who enquired how long Sir Humphrey had been removed from the occupation of the next domain : to which the servant replied, About five or six months ; but could not tell whither he was gone to. They therefore resolved to go to London, and enquire of some persons who resided there, who could they knew give them all necessary information. And accordingly out they set ; and, on arriving at the end of their journey, learnt, to their great disappointment, that Sir Humphrey had recovered himself in the king's favour, and was governor of a castle

but on taking the thing into consideration, they recollected that all the barons and nobility would assert the justice of Edward's claims ; and, if the king refused to confirm them, rise up in a body to enforce it : that this support was therefore quite sufficient ; and with this determination, they wrote without delay to Sir Francis, that he might without hazard come over.

Five days from the time this was received, he with the Baron and the rest of the party arrived ; and they now began to consult how to set about the important business then on their hands. A billet was written to Sir Humphrey, setting forth the grounds on which he was called forth to prove whether or no his claims were just, and appointing to meet him at the governor's of the district, to which Sir Philip's estate belonged, to decide the question. This was without delay dispatched by a messenger to Sir Humphrey, and an answer was impatiently awaited. On receiving it, Sir Humphrey fell into the greatest rage imaginable, and his own servants thought it expedient that they should run out of his way, lest they should be torn to pieces ; such was the violence of his wrath, at being put in fear of being deprived of his usurped estates. Having at length recovered from the first effects of the unexpected billet, he wrote in answer, that he would be at the appointed place on the day mentioned, and sent it back by Sir Francis's messenger.

As soon as it arrived at the end of its journey,



and had been read, Sir Francis, with the Baron, the three knights, and their squires, set out for the mansion of Sir Thomas Montrose, who was then chief governor of the district in which Sir Philip's estate was, where at the end of five days they arrived; and on the day after, which was the one appointed, Sir Humphrey likewise arrived. After a short investigation of the business, Sir Thomas declared, that the claims were undoubtedly in favour of the young knight; but as it might be more acceptable to both parties, would appear more honourable to the ears of those who heard of it, and would prevent evil-disposed persons from venting their malice by saying it was not so, he proposed the affair should be decided by arms; which was readily assented to, particularly by Sir Humphrey, who having always been reputed as very skilful in feats of arms, hoped by this means to overthrow his antagonist, and come off victorious.

Each party, therefore, called in the several knights and noblemen who were to act as witnesses to the combat; and an inclosure having been made before the mansion, early one morning the combatants entered it, and took their post opposite each other, in front of no less than twelve noblemen of distinguished rank, besides forty knights of inferior degree, and a vast number of ladies; the latter of whom all of them, by their eager looks, evidently shewed how they wished the combat to terminate. A herald then proclaimed aloud the challenge of

Edward to his opponent, which another proclaimed would be accepted ; and every thing being in readiness, the knights took their weapons, and at the first signal charged each other with great fury. At the first onset their lances broke in twain in the middle, and their horses received so violent a shock, that they were both nearly being thrown off ; but nothing more material happened. In the second, Sir Humphrey was not so fortunate, as fresh weapons were instantly procured ; for his antagonist, coming up with great force, he was fairly thrust out of his saddle, and driven over his horse's tail backwards upon the ground. Leaping up, he drew his sword ; and Edward having alighted and done the same, they fell to with great vigour. But the combat lasted not long, however, in this manner ; for in a short time Edward ran his adversary through the body, and he fell down apparently dead ; while the victor retired from the inclosure, amidst the echo of applause, and acclamations from the scaffolding.

Assistance being procured, and a surgeon got, Sir Humphrey presently recovered his senses ; and the fear of death had taken such hold on him, that he in his terror of it made a confession of all his numerous crimes, to the great astonishment of the greater part of the hearers ; and Sir Francis related more fully the different particulars of Edward's claims. The ladies were without delay sent for from London, and, with the rest of the household, arrived in a few days. And the young knight, hav-

ing received the congratulations of Sir Thomas, and all the rest of the knights and noblemen, went to take possession of his estates ; where the first thing he did was to replace all the old tenants and domestics, whom his predecessor Sir Humphrey had turned away, and who were still living in that part of the country, in their former situations ; and next to remove the remains of Sir Philip and his lady, which their murderer had in his confession said were deposited beneath one of the towers, to a handsome monument, in the church-yard of the village, and have the one Sir Humphrey had erected at his mock funeral of Lady de Valence pulled down.

Nothing now remained but the confirmation of his claims by the king, to procure which Sir Francis thought it advisable that he should go to London. Accordingly he did so ; and having attained his end, he on his return declared to the Baron his attachment to the Lady Ellena. The Baron gave his consent to their marriage. The same day did it happen that the Baron's two sons, who had conceived an affection, the one to the Lady Philippa, and the other to the Lady Matilda, declared it ; and as they likewise met with the approbation of all parties, the nuptials of three couple were celebrated three successive weeks with great rejoicings. And thus did Sir Francis's dream come not only to be realized, but in still greater joy than his fancy had represented.

Sir Francis, at the entreaty of his young knight, resolved to continue at the castle for the rest of his

life. The Baron's two sons purchased a domain in the immediate vicinity, which was unoccupied ; and it being very large, divided it between them : while the Baron, who preferred living by himself, occupied a small but pleasant mansion in the midst of the boundary between them, so as to be at an equal distance from both. The Lady Barbarina went off with a knight, whom she had met with at Sir Thomas's, to his estate ; and Michael heartily rejoiced, that after all their troubles, they were at last comfortably settled. And as for the rest of the persons who have been mentioned in this history, Sir Humphrey de Valence, whose wound, though dangerous, was not mortal, having by the attendance of a skilful surgeon, and considerable care, recovered from it, went to his own castle, to vent his vexation ; where in a short time he became such a tyrant, that his own men formed a conspiracy among themselves, and assassinated him. And Sir Everard Tracy, having been suspected by Sir Humphrey of assisting the Lady Matilda in her escape, was by him poisoned.

A short time after Edward and his lady had been married, she presented him with a son, who was named after his father. They besides this had afterwards several other children ; and Sir Francis lived to see them become happy in the completion of all their wishes.

THE END.





